

# GANZ KLASSE!

#1



## STUDENT BOOK

EDDA KAMPHUES + SARAH MAY  
JENNY JEFFERY + ELLEN DUNN  
ELLEN MOFFATT + KATHY HALPIN





## **COPYRIGHT NOTICE**

Copyright in this work is owned by Cengage Learning Australia (“the work”). A condition of purchase of this electronic version of the work is that you agree to respect the copyright in the work, abide by the Copyright Act 1968 and specifically agree not to transfer, sell, assign, misuse, copy or transmit an electronic or other version of the work to any third party.

**Please note:** This product is accompanied by a licence (single user, network or adoption) governing the terms and conditions of its use.

This is a legal agreement between the you, (the “Customer”) and Cengage Learning Australia Pty Limited (ABN 14 058 280 149) (the “Licensor”) which provides the terms and conditions of this non-exclusive licence and the limited warranty for the Product. Use of the Product indicates an acknowledgement that the Customer has read and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. If you do not agree to these terms and conditions, return the Product to the place of purchase within 15 days of the date of purchase (with proof of purchase) for a full refund

#### **1. Licence Grant**

You do not receive title to the Product. Copyright in the Product (which includes all images, photographs, video, animations, audio, music and text incorporated in the Product, including all of the accompanying printed material) is owned by the Licensor and/or its suppliers and is protected by Australian copyright laws. The Licensor grants you a non-exclusive licence to use the Product subject to the restrictions and terms set out in this Agreement.

#### **2. A Licence allows you to:**

Use the Product on your computer. The Customer represents that they shall in no way place the Product in the public domain or in any way compromise our copyright in the Material. You agree to take reasonable steps to protect our copyright.

#### **3. You may not:**

Alter, modify, translate, reverse engineer, decompile, or adapt the software or create derivative works based on the Product. Make further copies by any means technological, electronic, digital whatsoever without the written permission of the Licensor. Rent or transfer all or any part of your rights under this Agreement. Remove or alter any copyright or other proprietary notice or label attached to the software.

#### **4. Termination**

Any failure to comply with the terms and conditions of this agreement will result in the automatic termination of this licence. Upon termination of this licence for any reason, the Customer must destroy or return to the Licensor all copies of the software and accompanying documentation.

#### **5. Warranties**

To the extent permitted by law, the Licensor’s liability for any breach of the warranty or any term implied by law into this licence is limited to the lowest cost of replacing the goods, acquiring equivalent goods or having the goods repaired.



NORWEGEN

SCHWEDEN

NORDIRLAND

IRLAND

Nordsee

DÄNEMARK

Ostsee

GROSSBRITANNIEN

DIE NIEDERLANDE

Berlin •

POLEN

ATLANTISCHER OZEAN

Der Kanal

BELGIEN

DEUTSCHLAND

LUXEMBURG

DIE TSCHECHISCHE REPUBLIK

DIE SLOWAKEI

FRANKREICH

LIECHTENSTEIN

Wien •

• Bern  
DIE SCHWEIZ

ÖSTERREICH

UNGARN

SLOWENIEN

PORTUGAL

SPANIEN

MONACO

SAN MARINO

KROATIEN

BOSNIEN-HERZEGOWINA

SERBIEN

KORSIKA (FRANKREICH)

ITALIEN

MONTENEGRO

SARDINIEN (ITALIEN)

ALBANIEN

Mittelmeer

# GANZ KLASSE!

#1



## STUDENT BOOK

**EDDA KAMPHUES + SARAH MAY**  
**JENNY JEFFERY + ELLEN DUNN**  
**ELLEN MOFFATT + KATHY HALPIN**



Ganz Klasse! 1  
1st Edition  
Edda Kamphues  
Sarah May  
Jenny Jeffery  
Ellen Dunn  
Ellen Moffatt  
Katherine Halpin  
ISBN 9780170419505

Publishers: Danielle Dominguez and Dirk Strasser  
Project editor: Robyn Beaver  
Copy editor: Ingrid De Baets  
Language consultants: Anna Beilharz, Heike Craig, Fiona King,  
Josie Nembach  
Text design: Leigh Ashforth (Watershed Art & Design)  
Cover design: Fiona Lee (Studio Pounce Creative)  
Cover art direction: Justin Lim  
Cover images: Getty Images/iStock/nattaponsukjit; Getty Images/Oliver  
Hibert; Getty Images/Volker Schlichting/EyeEm; Getty Images/Maskot  
Project designer: James Steer  
Illustrator: Scott Fraser  
Permissions researcher: Catherine Kerstjens  
Production controller: Renee Tome  
Typesetter: Lisa Howard Design

Any URLs contained in this publication were checked for currency during the production process. Note, however, that the publisher cannot vouch for the ongoing currency of URLs.

#### Acknowledgements

Page 39: Shutterstock.com/vetkit, Shutterstock.com/Aleksandrs Bondars;  
page 50: Shutterstock.com/Grufi; page 97: Shutterstock.com/colors; page  
120: iStock.com; page 143: Shutterstock.com/Happiest Sima, Shutterstock.  
com/Alhovik, Shutterstock.com/Studio217, iStock.com/miakievky,  
Shutterstock.com/Cyndyk\_IDS, Shutterstock.com/bas van breemen,  
Shutterstock.com/bioraven; page 164: Shutterstock.com/Kostikova Natalia;  
page 171: Shutterstock.com/IB Photography; page 179: Shutterstock.  
com/hans.slegers, Shutterstock.com/robuart; page 180: Shutterstock.  
com/Daniel Prudek, Shutterstock.com/Drozdowski; page 181: Shutterstock.  
com/KY726871

© 2019 Cengage Learning Australia Pty Limited

#### Copyright Notice

This Work is copyright. No part of this Work may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission of the Publisher. Except as permitted under the *Copyright Act 1968*, for example any fair dealing for the purposes of private study, research, criticism or review, subject to certain limitations. These limitations include: Restricting the copying to a maximum of one chapter or 10% of this book, whichever is greater; providing an appropriate notice and warning with the copies of the Work disseminated; taking all reasonable steps to limit access to these copies to people authorised to receive these copies; ensuring you hold the appropriate Licences issued by the Copyright Agency Limited ("CAL"), supply a remuneration notice to CAL and pay any required fees. For details of CAL licences and remuneration notices please contact CAL at Level 11, 66 Goulburn Street, Sydney NSW 2000, Tel: (02) 9394 7600, Fax: (02) 9394 7601 Email: [info@copyright.com.au](mailto:info@copyright.com.au) Website: [www.copyright.com.au](http://www.copyright.com.au)

For product information and technology assistance,  
in Australia call **1300 790 853**;  
in New Zealand call **0800 449 725**

For permission to use material from this text or product, please email  
[aust.permissions@cengage.com](mailto:aust.permissions@cengage.com)

#### National Library of Australia Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the National Library of Australia.

#### Cengage Learning Australia

Level 7, 80 Dorcas Street  
South Melbourne, Victoria Australia 3205

#### Cengage Learning New Zealand

Unit 4B Rosedale Office Park  
331 Rosedale Road, Albany, North Shore 0632, NZ

For learning solutions, visit [cengage.com.au](http://cengage.com.au)

Printed in China by 1010 Printing International Limited.  
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 23 22 21 20 19



# PREFACE

Congratulations on choosing German! Strap yourself in for a wondrous ride through the German-speaking world, where you will get to know what makes the German, Austrian and Swiss people tick. You will learn about their daily lives and compare their culture and experiences with your own. Along the way, you will develop the skills needed to understand, speak, read and write simple, useful and up-to-date German.

English and German are in the same language family, so you may already be familiar with German words such as *Kindergarten*, *Angst*, *Schnitzel* and *Gesundheit*! Because the languages are closely related, they often borrow from each other, and you will be surprised at the number of similarities you will find.

Germany is a powerhouse in Europe and is a world leader in areas including science, technology and the arts. Germany is an attractive destination for the global citizen to travel, work or live.

Roughly 130 million people around the globe speak German as their native language or as a second language. German is the official language in seven countries. In another 42 countries there are more than 7.5 million people who are part of a German-speaking minority.

In addition, 15.4 million people around the world are currently learning German as a foreign language, so you are in great company.

This Student Book is supported by the accompanying Workbook, which gives you lots of practice in listening, reading and writing, and by the audio and online digital activities, which will give you further practice. We hope you find this course '*Ganz klasse*'!

The *Ganz Klasse! 1* author team



# About the series

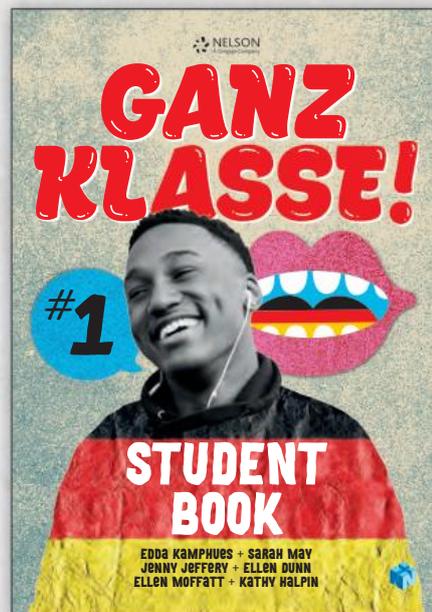
## *Ganz Klasse! 1 and 2, 1st edition*

*Ganz Klasse! 1 and 2* has been written to fully address the requirements of the Australian Curriculum: German. The series is intended for level 1 (Years 7–8) and level 2 (Years 9–10) beginners.

Combining a well-paced communicative approach with a focus on intercultural pedagogy, students will be able to build their language skills with confidence while developing their intercultural competence.

### Student Book

The Student Book for each level is clearly structured, and allows for meaningful and fun language and culture learning, reflecting and comparing. It provides a variety of tasks and texts, which develop and consolidate both productive and receptive skills, interwoven with many opportunities for the development of general capabilities and cross-curriculum priorities. It includes lively cartoon spreads, photos, reading passages and multiple occasions for intercultural reflection.



### Workbook

The Workbooks offer a wealth of reinforcing exercises, drills and tasks to consolidate and revise the language and culture encountered in the Student Book. Audio tracks are provided on the student website to complete the listening exercises.

## Teacher Toolkit

The Teacher Toolkit includes:

- unit overview grids that assist with lesson planning and highlight the links between the series components
- teaching notes on how to use the course materials and extension tasks, games and worksheets
- unit tests and solutions
- Workbook solutions and audio transcripts.



## NelsonNetBook

The NelsonNetBook is an online version of the Student Book, with interactive links. It can be personalised by adding notes, weblinks and audio recordings, and can be used to share comments in class. There are also 'hot spots' that provide access to a variety of multimedia resources.

## Ganz Klasse! website on NelsonNet

NelsonNet is your portal to a wealth of additional resources for students and teachers. Each level of *Ganz Klasse!* offers a student website and a teacher website.

The student website includes:

- selected audio tracks from the Student Book
- worksheets for additional speaking practice
- grammar videos
- unit quizzes.

The teacher website includes all the material from the student website, plus:

- curriculum grids and teaching plans to help you with lesson planning
- Workbook solutions
- unit tests with solutions
- audio transcripts.

# Contents

THEMA 1	THEMA 2	THEMA 3
<b>Wer ist das?</b>	<b>Los geht's zur Schule!</b>	<b>Hobbys machen Spaß!</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>30</b>
		
<b>INFOS</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• German-speaking countries</li> <li>• Neighbouring countries of Germany</li> <li>• German language and dialects</li> </ul>	<b>INFOS</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• German schools</li> <li>• <i>Schultüte</i></li> <li>• German timetables and school reports</li> <li>• Writing German numbers</li> </ul>	<b>INFOS</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hobbies and sport in German-speaking countries</li> </ul>
<b>KOMMUNIKATION</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greeting people</li> <li>• Asking someone how they are and responding</li> <li>• Introducing yourself</li> <li>• Saying where you and others are from</li> <li>• Describing someone's personality</li> </ul>	<b>KOMMUNIKATION</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Numbers 0–20</li> <li>• Giving your telephone number</li> <li>• Talking about your timetable and school subjects</li> <li>• Describing your school subjects</li> </ul>	<b>KOMMUNIKATION</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Saying what sports and activities you do</li> <li>• Saying what instruments you play</li> <li>• Asking someone about what they do on certain days</li> <li>• Talking about what you do on certain days</li> <li>• Saying what activities you like doing</li> </ul>
<b>GRAMMATIK</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction to verbs: <i>kommen</i> and <i>heißen</i></li> <li>• About verbs: infinitives and conjugation</li> <li>• Present tense of <i>gehen</i> and <i>sein</i></li> </ul>	<b>GRAMMATIK</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Question words: <i>welche</i>, <i>wie</i>, <i>wann</i>, <i>was</i></li> <li>• Noun genders (<i>der</i>, <i>die</i>, <i>das</i>)</li> <li>• Personal pronouns</li> <li>• Present tense of <i>finden</i> and <i>haben</i></li> </ul>	<b>GRAMMATIK</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• German word order</li> <li>• Forming questions with verbs</li> <li>• Present tense of <i>machen</i>, <i>spielen</i>, <i>gehen</i>, <i>kennen</i>, <i>singen</i>, <i>hören</i></li> </ul>

**THEMA 4****Meine Familie,  
deine Familie****44****INFOS**

- Different types of families in German-speaking countries
- The multicultural nature of modern Germany
- Family traditions and celebrations

**KOMMUNIKATION**

- Talking about family
- Numbers 21–100

**GRAMMATIK**

- Use of apostrophes in German
- Singular and plural of nouns
- Indefinite articles (*ein, kein*)
- Possessive adjectives in the nominative case (*mein, dein*)

**THEMA 5****Die Klamotten****58****INFOS**

- Modern fashion in Germany
- Types of clothing stores in Germany
- Traditional clothing in Germany

**KOMMUNIKATION**

- Talking about clothing
- Talking about colours and patterns

**GRAMMATIK**

- Present tense of irregular verbs *tragen* and *mögen*
- Separable verb *aussehen*
- Revision: definite and indefinite articles
- Accusative case (*den, einen*)

**THEMA 6****Guten Appetit!****72****INFOS**

- German food and meals
- Formal and informal register
- Mealtime traditions, routines and expressions

**KOMMUNIKATION**

- Talking about breakfast and lunch
- Describing taste
- Talking about what you eat and drink at mealtimes
- Mealtime expressions

**GRAMMATIK**

- Introduction to compound nouns
- Polite form of *du* and *ihr* (*Sie*)
- Present tense of *trinken, essen, nehmen*
- More on word order
- Adverbs of frequency
- Comparative and superlative of *gut*

**KLASSE KULTUR 1 –  
FROHE WEIHNACHTEN!**

**86**

## THEMA 7

### Was machst du heute?

90



#### INFOS

- Favourite holiday activities in German-speaking countries
- What the seasons are like in German-speaking countries
- School holidays in German-speaking countries

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Saying the date and your birthday
- Asking others when their birthdays are
- Talking about plans for the weekend and arranging to meet with a friend
- Describing your holidays
- Describing the weather
- Using 24-hour time
- Inviting someone

#### GRAMMATIK

- Present tense of *fahren*
- Simple past of *sein*
- Prepositions *in/im, um, am* (in response to *Wo/Wann ...?*)
- Ordinal numbers

## THEMA 8

### Mit dem Zug

104



#### INFO

- Types of transport in German-speaking countries
- How people use public transport and why
- The history of some German transport

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Talking about how you travel to school
- Saying what you must, should, can, may and want to do

#### GRAMMATIK

- Modal verbs *können, dürfen, müssen, sollen, wollen*
- *Mit* + dative case
- Present tense of *fahren, nehmen, helfen*
- Negative sentences using *nicht*

## THEMA 9

### Wir lieben Tiere!

118



#### INFO

- The types of pets that are popular in German-speaking countries
- Pet hotels
- Zoos

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Talking about different types of pets and what they eat
- Describing animals
- Talking about whether you or others have pets
- Saying what animals you like or dislike

#### GRAMMATIK

- Present tense of *fressen* and *essen*
- Possessive adjectives *sein(e), ihr(e)*
- Modal verb *mögen*
- Comparative and superlative of *gern*
- Diminutive forms

## THEMA 10

### Alles Gute zum Geburtstag!

134



#### INFO

- Birthday traditions in German-speaking countries
- Music in German-speaking countries

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Wishing someone a happy birthday
- Talking about giving and receiving presents
- Saying who something belongs to
- Talking about what music you like and dislike

#### GRAMMATIK

- Possessive adjectives in the nominative case (*mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, ihr*)
- Possessive adjectives in the accusative case
- More on compound nouns

## THEMA 11

### Bei uns zu Hause

148



#### INFO

- Where people live in German-speaking countries
- How German and Australian/New Zealander lifestyles compare

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Describing different types of homes
- Talking about where you live
- Describing your home
- Saying what chores you do at home

#### GRAMMATIK

- Separable verbs: construction and word order
- Present tense of separable verbs *ankommen, abfahren, anrufen*
- Use of separable verbs with modal verbs
- Formation of compound nouns

## THEMA 12

### Bis bald!

162



#### INFO

- Souvenirs and keepsakes from German-speaking countries

#### KOMMUNIKATION

- Understanding and giving simple directions
- Talking about leaving and seeing someone again
- Talking about giving presents
- Using different expressions to say goodbye

#### GRAMMATIK

- Present tense of *vergessen*
- Personal pronouns in accusative case (*mich, dich, ihn, sie, es, uns, euch, sie, Sie*)
- Preposition *für* + accusative case
- Reflexive verbs

## KLASSE KULTUR 2 – FESTE UND FEIERTAGE

176

Deutsch–Englisch Wortschatz 182  
Englisch–Deutsch Wortschatz 196

# How to use this book

## Unit introduction

The opening spread gives you a visual introduction to the unit, with lots of images and captions to prompt intercultural discussion. Looking at culturally rich and authentic photographs, you and your classmates will be able to notice and reflect on different aspects of German culture.



## Infos

Here you will learn more about the cultural aspects presented in the unit and take on a *Projekt* that will enable you to research these themes further. You will also learn new vocabulary to help broaden your conversations.



## Cartoon story

Each story follows the adventures of our characters in and around Göttingen, Germany. The cartoons will introduce you to new words and expressions in a fun and engaging way. It won't be long before you are able to master the key structures.



## Kommunikation

This is where you start looking at how the German language works. You will learn about the different functions of specific structures, such as how to introduce someone and what expression to use.



## Deutsch und Englisch

Begin to learn about German grammar rules by translating and comparing with English grammar rules. Learn interesting facts about your own language while learning a new one!



## Leseseite

In this section you will be presented with different text types, such as emails, blogs, advertisements and postcards, to help you practise your reading.



## Sprache und Kultur

Here you will complete activities to further explore the cultural and intercultural themes presented in the unit, learning some additional vocabulary along the way.



## Grammatik

This is where you get an overview of the grammar and language in the unit, with lots of examples and helpful explanations. The focus of this section is on the building blocks of language that form the basis for the functions you have seen in *Kommunikation*.



## Auf einen Blick

*Auf einen Blick* means 'at a glance'. These sections list the essential new words and expressions you have learnt in each unit.



## Activities

Throughout the unit you will have the opportunity to engage in different activities and tasks, putting into practice the language you are learning.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In these tasks you are asked to discuss a variety of questions about German culture and language with your classmates and teacher.

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

Through these tasks you will practise your reading skills, looking for a range of information in a variety of texts.

### LET'S TRANSLATE!

Through these tasks you will be reflecting on how the German and English languages work through translating. You will soon become an expert at mediating between two codes and cultures.

### MACH MIT!

This means 'Join in!'. In these sections you will use role plays, surveys, pairwork and group discussions to practise German in real-life situations.

## Klasse Kultur

At the end of every six units you will have the chance to go deeper into German culture and learn more about it while engaging in fun and creative activities.



## Icons

Throughout your Student Book you will find the following icons. Most icons signal extra resources on the student website. In the NelsonNetBook, you can click on the icon to open the resource.



'animated' version of the cartoon story



quiz



audio recording



grammar video clips



play 'n' say (Listen to the text, record yourself saying the words and then listen to your recording.)



worksheet

# Das Klassenzimmer!

## Was sagt man?

Let's start learning German right now! Here are common expressions you will be hearing and saying.

Teacher expressions	
Guten Morgen!	Good morning!
Hallo!	Hello!
Setzt euch!	Sit down!
Pass(t) auf!	Pay attention!
Ruhe, bitte!	Quiet, please!
Mach(t) bitte das Licht an/aus!	Please, turn the light on/off!
Melde dich, bitte!	Please, put your hand up!
Meldet euch, bitte!	Please, put your hands up!
Auf Deutsch, bitte!	In German, please!
Macht eure Bücher auf/zu!	Open/close your books!
Seite ...	Page ...
Noch einmal, bitte!	Once again, please!
Komm(t) an die Tafel!	Come to the board!
Schreib(t) das auf!	Write that down!
Steh(t) bitte auf!	Stand up, please!
Mach(t) bitte die Tür auf/zu!	Please, open/close the door!
Mach(t) bitte die Tafel sauber!	Clean the board, please!
Stell(t) bitte die Stühle hoch!	Please, put the chairs up!
Ausgezeichnet!	Excellent!
Genau!	Exactly!, Spot on!
Gratuliere!	Congratulations!
Gute Arbeit!	Good work!
Gut gemacht!	Well done!
Gute Idee!	Good idea!
Sehr gut!	Very good!
Student expressions	
Frau!	Miss!
Herr!	Sir!
Guten Morgen, Herr .../Frau ...!	Good morning, Mr .../Ms ...!
Entschuldigung!	Excuse me!, I'm sorry!
Ich weiß es nicht.	I don't know.
Wie bitte?	Pardon?
Darf ich auf die Toilette gehen?	May I go to the toilet?
Darf ich ... etwas fragen?	May I ask ... something?
Was ist das?	What is that?
Ich bin fertig.	I'm finished.

# Hier sind wir!



Hallo! Ich heiße Anna Schneider.  
Ich komme aus Deutschland.

Ich heiße Max Steiner.  
Ich spiele Saxophon.



Servus! Ich bin Christian Gruber.  
Ich komme aus Österreich.



Hi! Ich bin Julia Heine.  
Ich wohne in Göttingen.



Ich bin Sibel Hayak.  
Ich habe zwei Brüder  
und eine Schwester.



Ich bin Jessie Newman-McDonald.  
Ich bin Austauschschülerin.  
Ich mag Sport.



Tag! Mein Name ist Herr Lenz.  
Ich bin der Klassenlehrer.  
Ich bin auch Mathelehrer.



Ich bin Nick Davies.  
Ich komme aus Australien.  
Ich bin Austauschschüler.



# Wer ist das?

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ greet people
- ✓ introduce yourself
- ✓ say where you and others are from
- ✓ ask someone how they are and respond
- ✓ briefly describe yourself and others.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ German-speaking countries
- ✓ neighbouring countries of Germany.

There are many ways in German-speaking countries to greet each other. It often depends on your age, where you live, who you are speaking to, what situation you are in and, of course, your personal preference. While Germans often say *Guten Tag* (regardless of the time of day), people from Bavaria and Austria prefer *Grüß Gott!* and Swiss Germans usually say *Grüezi*. In everyday conversation, most people, especially the younger generation, prefer to just use *Hallo* or simply *Hi*, particularly when speaking to their peers.

See how each of these people say hello in German.  
Can you find more ways to greet someone in German?



iStock.com/JackF

Hallo! Alles gut?

iStock.com/martin-dm

Hi! Was geht ab?  
Ich heiße Elias.



iStock.com/MmeEmil

Guten Tag!  
Wie heißt ihr?



Alamy Stock Photo/Reynaldo Chaib Paganelli

Guten Abend!

Schönen  
guten Abend!



iStock.com/arto\_cannon

Tschüs!

Bis dann!



Grüß Gott! Wie  
geht es Ihnen?

Sehr gut, danke!



Shutterstock.com/DW Labs, Incorporated

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- How many different ways of greeting someone in German are shown here? Can you find any more?
- Are there different ways of greeting someone in English? What are these and why are they different?
- Do you know if greetings vary between different English-speaking countries? Can you give examples?
- Do you greet adults or strangers differently to your friends?

## WO SPRICHT MAN DEUTSCH?

German is an official language in what is known as the **DACHL** countries. These are Germany (Deutschland), Austria (Österreich), Switzerland (die Schweiz, which has the official country code of CH; it stands for Confoederatio Helvetica, Latin for 'Swiss Confederation') and Liechtenstein. German is also spoken in eastern Belgium, Luxembourg and the north of Italy, and in the border areas of Poland, France and Denmark.

The Swiss population is 8.5 million, with 63 per cent speaking German. Switzerland has four official languages: German, French, Italian and Romansh. Most citizens speak more than one of the official languages.



iStock.com/chrisnthai



Das Brandenburger Tor in Berlin

Shutterstock.com/Roman Babakin



Der Zeitglockenturm in Bern

Shutterstock.com/ChicagoStockStudio



Schloss Belvedere in Wien

iStock.com/Bubat 1955



Das Schloss in Vaduz

### GERMANY

The city of Berlin is both a new and an old capital for Germany. After the Second World War (1939–45), Germany was divided into two countries: West Germany and East Germany. As a consequence, Berlin was also divided into two parts, separated by an extensive wall. Both Germany and Berlin were reunited in 1990. While Bonn in the Rhine Valley had been the capital of West Germany for about 40 years and East Berlin the capital of East Germany, after the reunification, a reunited Berlin became the capital again for the entire country.

What is the emblem of Berlin? Does your home country or region have a symbol or emblem?

### SWITZERLAND

Despite the fact that people in different parts of the country speak one or more of the four official languages, Switzerland has been united as one nation since the fourteenth century.

Like Canberra in Australia, Switzerland's capital city, Bern, is not its biggest city. Zurich, located in the German-speaking part of Switzerland, is the main cultural and economic centre.

### AUSTRIA

Austria's capital city is Vienna. It is famous as a cultural centre, particularly for classical music, opera and ballet. The city has many historical buildings from the Habsburg Empire era. Vienna is famous for its Sachertorte. Does your home country or region have a food specialty?

### LIECHTENSTEIN

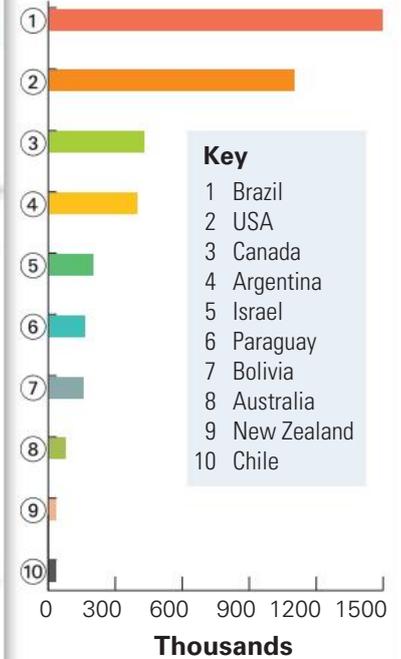
Liechtenstein is one of the smallest countries in the world – too small even to have its own airport! It lies on the edge of the Alps and borders with Austria and Switzerland. The head of state, the Prince of Liechtenstein, lives in a castle in the capital city, Vaduz.

The Vaduz castle is a famous landmark. Does your home country or region have any famous buildings? Can you name some other German-speaking countries?

**DEUTSCH SPRECHEN**

A person's first language is the one they speak growing up, while any language learnt after that is called a second (or additional) language. People who speak a language as their first language are called 'native speakers'. There are about 92 million people in the world who are native speakers of German. The map shows the countries with the highest number of people whose first language is German.

Germans love to travel and have also migrated to countries all over the world. This means that there are many native German speakers all over the world.



**Top 10 countries of German native speakers outside Europe**

**PROJEKTE**

Choose one project and create a digital presentation or poster using research based on the questions.

**PROJEKT 1 World languages**

Present your findings on the five most widely spoken languages in the world.

- What are they and where are they spoken?
- How do you say hello in each of the different languages? Are there variations and if so, why?
- What does it mean to be bilingual? How do people become bilingual?
- Why is it difficult to work out exactly how many people speak a particular language?
- What do you know about the languages spoken in your country?

**PROJEKT 2 DACHL capital cities**

Present your findings on the capital city of each of the DACHL countries.

- Are there landmarks, other than the ones mentioned on the previous page, that these cities are famous for?
- Does each city have an emblem or symbol? What is it and why was it chosen?
- If you went to the city, what would you like to see or do?
- Compare the city with the capital of your country. What are the similarities and differences?
- Which one of the cities are you most interested in and why?



Anna



Christian



Annas Mutter



Max



Sibel



Herr Lenz

At the end of the holidays, Anna is on the long train ride from Vienna, Austria, to the German city of Göttingen.

## Im Zug zwischen Wien und Göttingen



## In Göttingen



## Das neue Schuljahr beginnt



5  **Klassenzimmer 5A**

6 

7 

8 

9 

10 

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### True or false?

- 1 Anna and Christian say hello on the train.
- 2 Anna and Christian say goodbye at the train station.
- 3 Anna and Sibel both like Christian.
- 4 Christian comes from Vienna.
- 5 Mr Lenz's class is in the afternoon.

# Kommunikation

## 1 Saying hello

**Casual:** Hallo! Hi! Tag! Morgen!

**Formal:** Guten Morgen! Guten Tag! Guten Abend!

**Regional:** Grüß Gott! Servus! Grüß dich! Grüezi! Moin!



Guten Morgen!



Guten Tag!



Guten Abend!



## 2 Saying goodbye

**Casual:** Tschüs! Tschau! Bis bald!  
Bis dann! Tschüss!

**Formal:** Auf Wiedersehen!  
Wiedersehen!

**Regional:** Servus!



## 3 Asking how someone is

**Casual:** Wie geht's? Wie geht es dir? Was geht ab? Was ist los? Wie geht's, wie steht's?

**Formal:** Wie geht es Ihnen?



## 4 Answering how you are



Sehr gut.



Danke, gut.



Es geht.



Nicht so gut.



Schlecht.

**Casual:**

**Formal:** Mir geht es gut, danke, und Ihnen?

**Watch out:** The German translation for 'I am good/well' is *Mir geht es gut*. A literal translation from English does not work, and you need to memorise this phrase.



### MACH MIT!

#### How does your class feel?

Use the survey sheet to ask as many of your classmates as possible how they are. You have 5 minutes. Record your results as shown.

Name					
Matt	Sehr gut!				
Michelle			Es geht.		

## 5 Asking someone their name and where they are from



Shutterstock.com/Monkey Business Images

### MACH MIT!

#### Meeting someone

Take turns to act out this conversation with a partner. After the first turn, change the greetings and goodbyes with appropriate choices from the lists below. Make sure you always say what **your** name is and where you are from.

Hallo! Hi! Tag! Morgen!  
Guten Tag! Guten Morgen! Guten Abend!  
Grüß Gott! Servus! Grüß dich! Grüezi! Moin!

Tschüs! Tschau! Bis bald! Bis dann!  
Auf Wiedersehen! Wiedersehen!  
Servus!

**MACH MIT!****Meeting someone else**

Now act out the same conversation as in the previous *Mach mit!*, but change who you are to each of the following.



Timo aus Wien



Michelle aus Sydney

**6 Asking who someone is**

Lucas is new in school and he doesn't know anyone. He is asking Max who everyone is. Can you work out what Max is saying and what the highlighted words mean?

**MACH MIT!****Who's that?**

Point to one of the photos and ask who it is. Describe what they are like, using words from the lists.



sehr  
echt  
total  
ganz

nicht  
neu  
süß  
cool

sportlich  
streng  
nett  
freundlich

aus Australien  
aus Neuseeland  
aus Deutschland  
aus Österreich  
aus Liechtenstein  
aus Luxemburg

aus der Schweiz  
aus der Türkei



## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

Ich **komme** aus Neuseeland.  
 Woher **kommst** du?  
 Er **kommt** aus Wien.  
 Christian **kommt** aus Österreich.  
 Woher **kommen** Nick und Jessie?  
 Sie **kommen** aus Australien.  
 Herr Lenz **kommt** aus Deutschland.  
 Frau Berthold **kommt** aus der Schweiz.

Can you see a similarity to English?

How closely do these follow the same pattern?

Ich **heiße** Herr Lenz.  
 Er **heißt** Christian.  
 Sie **heißt** Anna.  
 Wie **heißt** du?

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Find some German sentences from this chapter where a word-for-word translation into English is possible, and find some German sentences from this chapter where it is not possible.

## What's different about German?

### ü, ä und ö

In German, the two dots above the vowels u, a and o are called an *Umlaut*. An *Umlaut* changes the sound of these vowels. When using a computer, there are a number of ways you can insert characters with an *Umlaut*. You can find Ä, ä, Ö, ö, Ü and ü by going to the Insert menu and selecting Symbol. Then click on the letter or set up your own Shortcut key. On a Mac, just hold down the key for the vowel you need and a list of options will pop up, from which you select the vowel with the *Umlaut*.

### ß

The letter ß (pronounced *ess tsett* or *scharfes S* in German) is used instead of *ss* when a word has a long vowel, like in the word *süß*. After a short vowel, you do not use ß, like in the word *Schloss*. Note that ß is not used in Swiss German or in Liechtenstein. You can find ß in Word by going to the Insert menu and selecting Symbol. Then either double-click on the letter and click on Insert, or use a Shortcut key. On a Mac, just hold down the key for the letter s and select ß from the box that pops up.

### The German alphabet



The German alphabet is similar to the English alphabet. Which letters sound most like the English ones? Which letters sound least like the English ones?

<b>A</b> = ah	<b>N</b> = enn
<b>B</b> = beh	<b>O</b> = oh
<b>C</b> = tseh	<b>P</b> = peh
<b>D</b> = deh	<b>Q</b> = coo
<b>E</b> = eh	<b>R</b> = err
<b>F</b> = eff	<b>S</b> = ess
<b>G</b> = geh	<b>T</b> = teh
<b>H</b> = hah	<b>U</b> = oo
<b>I</b> = ee	<b>V</b> = fow
<b>J</b> = yott	<b>W</b> = veh
<b>K</b> = kah	<b>X</b> = icks
<b>L</b> = ell	<b>Y</b> = üpsilon
<b>M</b> = emm	<b>Z</b> = tsett

## Christians email

**Botschaft** ☰ ✕

**Von:** christian.gruber413@web.de

**An:** tobik21@gmx.at

Hallo Tobi,

Wie geht's in Wien?

Ich bin hier in Göttingen. Die neue Schule heißt Theodor-Heuss-Gymnasium. Max ist in meiner Klasse. Er ist sehr nett und freundlich. Und Anna ... sie ist echt süß!

Der Klassenlehrer heißt Herr Lenz. Er ist nett, aber streng. Er ist auch der Mathelehrer. Ich finde Mathe gut.

Wie ist die Schule in Wien? Ist Frau Meier die Klassenlehrerin?

Bis bald,

dein Christian

senden ✉ 📎 ↶ ✍ ✂

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Christian ist in Wien.
- 2 Max ist nicht in Christians Klasse.
- 3 Christian findet Anna süß.
- 4 Christians Familienname ist Gruber.
- 5 Tobis Schule ist in Deutschland.
- 6 Frau Meier ist eine Klassenlehrerin in Österreich.

Shutterstock.com/ms. Octopus

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- How can you tell from the email that Christian and Tobi are friends?
- Why do you think slightly different words for 'teacher' are used?
- What does Christian think about his maths teacher?
- What can you tell from Christian and Tobi's email addresses?
- What words in the email can you guess the meaning of?



# Sprache und Kultur

Not all native English speakers speak the same kind of English. You can often tell which country, region or city someone is from by certain words they use or their pronunciation.

For example, even without listening to the person saying these sentences, where do you think each of these people come from?

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Do you think all Australians or New Zealanders speak the same way?
- Do you think all Canadians speak the same way?
- Linguists (people who study languages) believe that you can tell where someone is from by the way they say the word 'plant' or 'chance'. Do you think that is true? How do you say these words?
- What are some other English words that are pronounced differently, depending on which English-speaking country or region you are from?



I wear runners to school.  
I wear trainers to school.  
I wear sneakers to school.



## So ist Deutsch!

German speakers from around the world not only say hello differently, they also use many different words and often pronounce them differently. These words and their pronunciations are influenced by the culture of the region. These differences are called accents and dialects. The main difference between an accent and a dialect is that the accent only affects the pronunciation of the words, whereas a dialect can have different grammatical features. Some dialects within Germany include *Bayrisch*, *Sächsisch*, *Ostfriesisch* and *Rheinländisch*. Sometimes these dialects even vary from town to town.

Although these dialects are all versions of German, they may be barely understood by speakers from other parts of the German-speaking world. Similar things happen in the English-speaking world. For example, many English speakers find Irish English difficult to understand.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Are there any dialects within your country or region?
- Are there any indigenous words that have been integrated into the English you speak?
- Do all indigenous groups in your country speak the same language? Why or why not?

To make sure German speakers can understand each other despite there being hundreds of dialects, everyone in the three largest German-speaking countries – Germany, Austria and Switzerland – is taught the standard German or *Hochdeutsch* for that country: *deutsches Hochdeutsch*, *österreichisches Hochdeutsch* and *schweizerisches Hochdeutsch*. Although there are some differences between these three standard Germans, speakers can generally understand each other. You can think of the difference between *deutsches Hochdeutsch* and *österreichisches Hochdeutsch*, for example, as similar to the difference between Australian English and New Zealand English. One of the key differences when writing Swiss German is that *ß* isn't used and is replaced by *ss*, and *ä*, *ö*, *ü* are usually written as *ae*, *oe*, *ue*.

**Fun fact:** This rule also applies to all German language crossword puzzles, regardless of the country or region.



## 1 Verbs

Every German sentence needs a verb. Sometimes an entire sentence can simply consist of a verb, so you cannot learn a language without knowing what a verb is. A verb is a word that describes an action or a condition. Here are some examples:

### Action verbs

to go            to cry  
to jump        to read  
to shop

### Condition verbs

to feel        to believe  
to be         to guess  
to know      to enjoy

Verbs can take many forms. For example, all these sentences contain the verb 'to go':

I'm **going** to school.  
Anita **goes** to the gym every day.  
I **went** to the concert last week.



Shutterstock.com/mstanley

The basic form of a verb as it appears in a dictionary is called the 'infinitive'. It consists of a stem and an infinitive ending. Examples of German stems are *komm*, *heiß* and *find*. In English, we use the word 'to' before a verb stem to show that it is an infinitive. Here are some examples:

### Verbs that are infinitives

to go            to feel  
to jump        to be

### Verbs that aren't infinitives

going         felt  
jumps         am



Shutterstock.com/Antonio Guillen

In German, infinitive endings are always 'n' or 'en'. These are added to the stem to form the full infinitive. Here are some infinitives of verbs you have come across in this chapter:

**gehen** – to go  
**kommen** – to come  
**heißen** – to be called  
**sein** – to be

The verb **sein** is unusual because the stem changes. See next page.

## 2 Conjugation

When a verb takes a different form to the infinitive, this is called 'conjugation'. Here are some examples with conjugated verbs in English:

I **go** to the football every week.  
 You **go** to the football every week?  
 He **goes** to the football every week.  
 Nick **goes** to the football every week.  
 We **go** to the football every week.  
 You guys **go** to the football every week?  
 They **go** to the football every week.



Shutterstock.com/matmix

The verb ending changes depending on who is going. This also happens in German, such as with the verb *gehen* (to go).

Personal pronoun	Conjugated form of <i>gehen</i>		Example	
ich	ge <b>he</b>	I go	Ich ge <b>he</b> in die Klasse.	I go to class.
du	geh <b>st</b>	you go	Du geh <b>st</b> in die Klasse.	You go to class.
er	geh <b>t</b>	he goes	Er geh <b>t</b> in die Klasse.	He goes to class.
sie	geh <b>t</b>	she goes	Sie geh <b>t</b> in die Klasse.	She goes to class.
Holger	geh <b>t</b>	Holger goes	Holger geh <b>t</b> in die Klasse.	Holger goes to class.
Anita	geh <b>t</b>	Anita goes	Anita geh <b>t</b> in die Klasse.	Anita goes to class.

Some verbs, such as *sein* (to be), don't follow a clear pattern in German or in English, so you need to memorise them.

Personal pronoun	Conjugated form of <i>sein</i>		Example	
ich	<b>bin</b>	I am	Ich <b>bin</b> hier in Wien.	I am here in Vienna.
du	<b>bist</b>	you are	Du <b>bist</b> hier in Wien.	You are here in Vienna.
er	<b>ist</b>	he is	Er <b>ist</b> hier in Wien.	He is here in Vienna.
sie	<b>ist</b>	she is	Sie <b>ist</b> hier in Wien.	She is here in Vienna.
Holger	<b>ist</b>	Holger is	Holger <b>ist</b> hier in Wien.	Holger is here in Vienna.
Anita	<b>ist</b>	Anita is	Anita <b>ist</b> hier in Wien.	Anita is here in Vienna.



## Greetings and goodbyes

Guten Tag!, Tag!, Hallo!	Hello!
Hi!	Hi!
Grüß dich!	Hello! (informal)
Guten Morgen!	Good morning!
(Morgen!)	(Morning!)
Servus!	Hello! Bye! (southern Germany and Austria)
Auf Wiedersehen!	Goodbye!
Bis bald!	See you soon!
Tschau!	Bye! Ciao! So long!
Tschüs! Tschüssi!	Bye! See you later!
Was geht ab?	What's up?
Wiedersehen!	Bye!
Wie geht's?	How are you?
Wie geht's, wie steht's?	How are you, how are things?
Danke, gut.	Well, thanks.
Nicht so gut.	Not so good.
Schlecht.	Bad.
Wer ist das?	Who is that?
Das ist ...	That is ...
Frau (Berthold)	Ms/Mrs (Berthold)
Herr (Lenz)	Mr (Lenz)

## Nouns

der Lehrer	male teacher
die Lehrerin	female teacher
die Klasse	class
die Schule	school
der Zug	train

## Question words

Wer?	Who?
Wie?	How?
Woher?	Where from?

## The verb sein (to be)

ich bin	I am
du bist	you are
er/sie/es ist	he/she/it is

## Saying your name and where you're from

kommen	to come from
Woher kommst du?	Where are you from?
Ich komme aus ...	I come from ...
Australien	Australia
Deutschland	Germany
Göttingen	Göttingen
Liechtenstein	Liechtenstein
Neuseeland	New Zealand
Österreich	Austria
der Schweiz	Switzerland
der Türkei	Turkey
Wien	Vienna
heißen	to be called
Wie heißt du?	What is your name?
Ich heiße ...	I am called ...

## Descriptive words

cool	cool
freundlich	friendly
gut	good, well
nett	nice
neu	new
schlecht	bad
sportlich	sporty
streng	strict
süß	cute, sweet
echt (nett)	really (nice)
nicht (gut)	not (good, well)
sehr (gut)	very (good, well)

## Useful expressions

Ach so!	I see!
Genau!	Exactly!, Spot on!
Genau mein Typ!	Just my type!
He ..., Na ...	Hey ...
Keine Ahnung!	No idea!
Mir geht's gut.	I'm well.
Und du?	And (what about) you?

# Los geht's zur Schule!

In this unit, you will learn to:

- use numbers 0 to 20
- briefly describe your school subjects
- talk about your school timetable
- give your telephone number.

You will also learn about:

- how school is structured in Germany
- what a German school report looks like
- some school traditions in German-speaking countries.

Teenagers around the world spend a lot of time at school – some more than others! In Germany and Austria, school starts at about 8.00 a.m. There are two breaks, one after the second lesson (*kleine Pause*) and a longer one after the fourth lesson (*große Pause*).

Students are more likely to take public transport to school than being driven by their parents. Traditionally, German schools finish at about 1.30 p.m.

A recent trend is for some schools in Germany to extend the traditional early finish and have a 'full' school day (*Ganztagschule*) where students can complete homework, participate in extracurricular activities (*AGs*, or *Arbeitsgemeinschaften*) and eat lunch at school in a cafeteria after lessons, as opposed to going home for lunch at 1.30 p.m.

School uniforms are not a feature of schooling in German-speaking countries – students have casual clothes day every day!

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Would you prefer a couple of short breaks during the school day or one short break and a long one for lunch?
- German students don't have lockers at school. Would you rather carry your school bag with you to each class, or leave your books in a locker and just take what is required to each lesson?
- Would you prefer to do your homework at school or at home? Why?
- Where would you like to do extracurricular activities – at school or outside school?



istock.com/justhavealook

Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance

Der Unterricht beginnt um 8.00 Uhr.

Stundenplan		Name: <i>Julius Krause</i>			Klasse: 7 B	
Stunde	Montag	Dienstag	Mittwoch	Donnerstag	Freitag	
1. 8.00–8.45	Mathe	Kunst	Physik	Deutsch	Französisch	
2. 8.50–9.35	Englisch	Geschichte	Erdkunde	Biologie	Mathe	
<b>Pause</b>						
3. 10.00–10.45	frei	Mathe	Italienisch	Mathe	Biologie	
4. 10.50–11.35	Chemie	Deutsch	Musik	Geschichte	Geschichte	
<b>Pause</b>						
5. 12.00–12.45	Biologie	Französisch	Kunst	Informatik	Sport	
6. 12.50–13.35	Erdkunde	Englisch	Deutsch	Italienisch	Sport	

Wir haben die Schultaschen in der Klasse!



Alamy Stock Photo/Clynt Garnham Education



Keine Schuluniform!



Wir gehen zur Schule.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are the advantages and disadvantages of wearing a school uniform?
- What are some of the reasons why *Ganztagsschule* might have been introduced?
- How would your morning routine change if you had to be at school by 8 a.m.?
- Think about the population density in German-speaking countries and Australia or New Zealand. How might this affect what programs can be offered in schools?
- Compare how students in Germany get to school with how you and your friends get to school. How many of your classmates walk, ride, or take the bus or train?

## DIE SCHULE IN DEUTSCHLAND

There are many differences between the school systems in Germany and Australia or New Zealand. The school year in Germany starts in August–September, at the end of summer. On their first day of *Grundschule* (primary school), German students receive a *Schultüte* (a large, decorated cone filled with stationery and lollies). After *Grundschule* (which lasts for 4 years), German students have the choice to attend *Hauptschule* (general high school), *Realschule* (intermediate high school) or *Gymnasium* (advanced high school).



Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance

### Das Zeugnis

Baden-Württemberg

REALSCHULE KOLLNAU, 7808 WALDKIRCH

Name der Schule

Zeugnis der Realschule

Klasse 10 Schuljahr 2020/21 1. Schulhalbjahr  
Vor- und Zuname Daniela Meier

Leistungen in den einzelnen Fächern:

Religionslehre	—	Biologie	3
( )		Sport	2
Deutsch	2	Musik	—
Erdkunde	2	Bildende Kunst	2
Geschichte	3	Ethik	—
Gemeinschaftskunde	2		
Englisch/Französisch	1	Natur und Technik	2
Mathematik	3	Hauswirtschaft/	
Physik	3	Textiles Werken	
Chemie	2	Französisch/Englisch	

Teilnahme an Arbeitsgemeinschaften:

Bemerkungen:

Datum

13. Dezember 2020

T. Birkle



B. Winteler  
Klassenlehrer

Gesehen!  
Erziehungsberechtigter:

Notenstufen: 1 = sehr gut, 2 = gut, 3 = befriedigend, 4 = ausreichend, 5 = mangelhaft, 6 = ungenügend

The grading system for school work in Germany is different from that in Australia and New Zealand. Students receive grades from 1 (excellent) to 6 (unsatisfactory). Students also receive grades for oral work and participation, which is more important than completion of homework. If a student has too many grades of 5 or 6, he or she must repeat the year. This is called *sitzenbleiben*. Students must successfully complete their *Abitur* (final exams) if they wish to study at university in Germany.

Students will often get a jumper with the names of their graduating class written on the back. There may also be an *Abiball* (like a school formal) where students can celebrate the end of their schooling with their friends.



Das Thomas-Mann-Gymnasium in Berlin

Alamy Stock Photo/Bildagentur-online/Schoening



Wir freuen uns auf den Abiball!

Alamy Stock Photo/Denys Kuvarev

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Die Schultüte**

Create a digital presentation or a poster on your research into the origins of the *Schultüte*. Include answers to the following:

- When did this tradition start?
- What does *Schultüte* mean in English?
- Are there other countries with a similar tradition? Explain the ritual.
- Has the custom changed at all over time?
- What do you think of the tradition? Give reasons for your answers.

**PROJEKT 2 Eine Schultüte basteln!**

- What would you like to receive in a *Schultüte*?
- Make a *Schultüte* for a classmate using practical as well as fun things!



Shutterstock.com/Bildagentur.Zoener GmbH



Herr Lenz



Julia



Anna



Max



Christian

The students are back at school and Anna is about to get a surprise!

## Der Matheunterricht

1

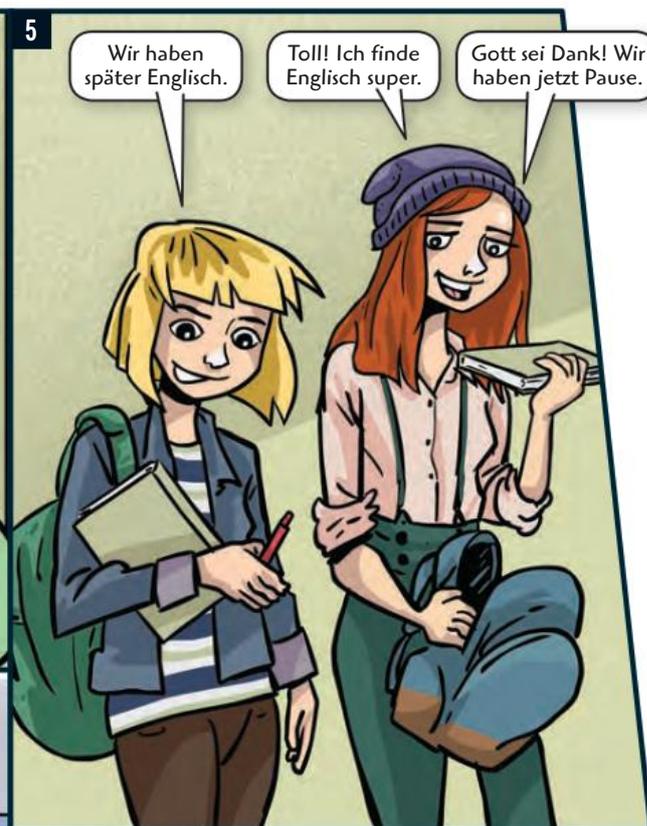


2



3





## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### True or false?

- 1 Mr Lenz is the English teacher.
- 2 Julia doesn't like Maths.
- 3 Max is new to the class.
- 4 Julia finds English great.
- 5 Anna looks at her mobile phone.

## 1 Numbers 0–20



0	null	11	elf
1	eins	12	zwölf
2	zwei	13	dreizehn
3	drei	14	vierzehn
4	vier	15	fünfzehn
5	fünf	16	sechzehn
6	sechs	17	siebzehn
7	sieben	18	achtzehn
8	acht	19	neunzehn
9	neun	20	zwanzig
10	zehn		

Do you notice any patterns?

Here's a rhyme to help you learn the numbers 1 to 10:

*Eins, zwei, Polizei,  
Drei, vier, ein Glas Bier,  
Fünf, sechs, alte Hex,  
Sieben, acht, gute Nacht.  
Neun, zehn, du musst gehn!*

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Have a look at how the numbers are written in German. Which numbers are written differently than in English?

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

By the way, the decimal point is written as a comma in German. You would say *zehn Komma drei* for '10.3'.

He, Tom! Wie ist deine Telefonnummer?



Meine Handynummer ist null-vier-null-drei-zwei-sechs-sieben-acht-neun-fünf.

Meine Telefonnummer ist neun-acht-drei-vier-null-sieben-zwei-fünf.



Und wie ist deine Handynummer?

### MACH MIT!

#### Talking about phone numbers

- 1 Read the dialogue aloud.
- 2 Create new dialogues with the following information:  
 Louise 5432 1098 and 0413 698 734  
 Torsten 6247 7700 and 0412 669 981  
 Mika 8122 0384 and 0403 112 977
- 3 Can you say your phone number and mobile number in German?



Shutterstock.com/Artus

2 Anna's timetable



Stunde	Montag	Dienstag	Mittwoch	Donnerstag	Freitag
1.	Englisch	Sozialwissenschaften	Informatik	Mathe	Informatik
2.	Englisch	Sozialwissenschaften	Mathe	Mathe	Musik
Pause					
3.	Naturwissenschaften	Englisch	Englisch	Naturwissenschaften	Deutsch
4.	Musik	Deutsch	Religion	Deutsch	Englisch
Pause					
5.	Deutsch	Sport	Sozialwissenschaften	Deutsch	Kunst
6.	Mathe	Sport	Naturwissenschaften	Musik	Kunst

Biologie  
Chemie  
Physik

Französisch  
Chinesisch  
Japanisch  
Italienisch  
Latein  
Indonesisch

Erdkunde  
Geschichte  
Sozialkunde

Samstag  
Sonntag  
Wochenende

Welche Fächer hast du, Anna?

Wann hast du Deutsch?

Was hast du am Mittwoch?

Ich habe Englisch, Mathe, Sport, Deutsch, Musik, Naturwissenschaften, Informatik, Sozialwissenschaften, Kunst und Religion.

Ich habe Deutsch am Montag, Dienstag, Donnerstag und Freitag.

Ich habe am Mittwoch Informatik, Mathe, Englisch, Religion, Sozialwissenschaften und Naturwissenschaften.

**MACH MIT!**

**Pairwork: Talking about timetables**

- 1 Read the dialogue between Christian and Anna aloud.
- 2 Choose a different subject of Anna's and ask when she has it.
- 3 Ask what Anna has on a different day.
- 4 Answer your partner's questions about what subjects you have on which days, according to your own timetable.

3 How do you find ...?



Wie findest du Englisch, Julia?

Ich finde Englisch super und Mathe doof. Was sind deine Lieblingsfächer?

Meine Lieblingsfächer sind Sport und Informatik.

Ich finde Englisch interessant, aber kompliziert.

Meine Lieblingsfächer sind Deutsch und Musik. Was sind deine Lieblingsfächer, Max?

**Some more adjectives you can use!**

<p>toll super interessant gut wichtig einfach</p>	<p>nicht schlecht O.K.</p>	<p>blöd doof (tod)langweilig nicht gut schlecht unwichtig kompliziert</p>
---	--------------------------------	---

Use the conversation above as a model and ask your classmates how they find certain subjects.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to see if you can discover something about German. Do you notice something about question words in German?

**Welche** Fächer hast du am Montag?

**Wie** ist deine ...nummer?

**Wie** findest du ...?

**Wann** hast du Deutsch?

**Was** hast du am Dienstag?

**Wer** ist das?

**Woher** kommst du?

Ich habe ...

Meine ...nummer ist ...

Ich finde ... toll!

Ich habe am ... Deutsch.

Ich habe am Dienstag ...

Das ist ...

Ich komme aus ...

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

- Find questions in the cartoon story and translate them into English. Can they be translated word for word?
- For those questions that cannot be translated word for word, what needs to change to make sense in English?

## What's different about German?

*Wie* can mean 'how' or 'what' in English.

**Wie** geht's?  
(How are you?)

**Wie** ist deine Handynummer?  
(What is your mobile number?)

You can't always translate word for word.

**Was** hast du am Montag?  
(What do you have on Monday?)

If you translate this question literally, it would be 'What have you on Monday?' In German the word 'do' is not needed for the sentence to be understood.

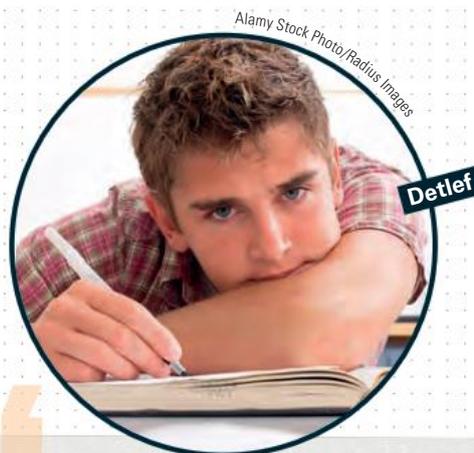


Shutterstock.com/Jakov Filimonov

## Tanja, Detlef und Thomas



Ich heiße Tanja. Ich bin zwölf. Ich finde Erdkunde, Französisch, Physik und Sport super. Ich finde Englisch kompliziert. Mein Lieblingstag ist Freitag. Am Freitag haben wir Französisch und Sport.



Ich heiße Detlef und komme aus der Schweiz. Ich bin fünfzehn. Ich finde Musik, Sport und Pausen toll. Hausaufgaben sind todlangweilig.



Hallo! Ich bin Thomas. Ich bin dreizehn. Ich habe Chemie, Biologie, Geschichte, Englisch und Informatik. Ich finde Chemie doof, aber Biologie ist toll. Ich habe eine 1 in Biologie. Meine Biologielehrerin heißt Frau Zedel. Sie ist sehr nett.

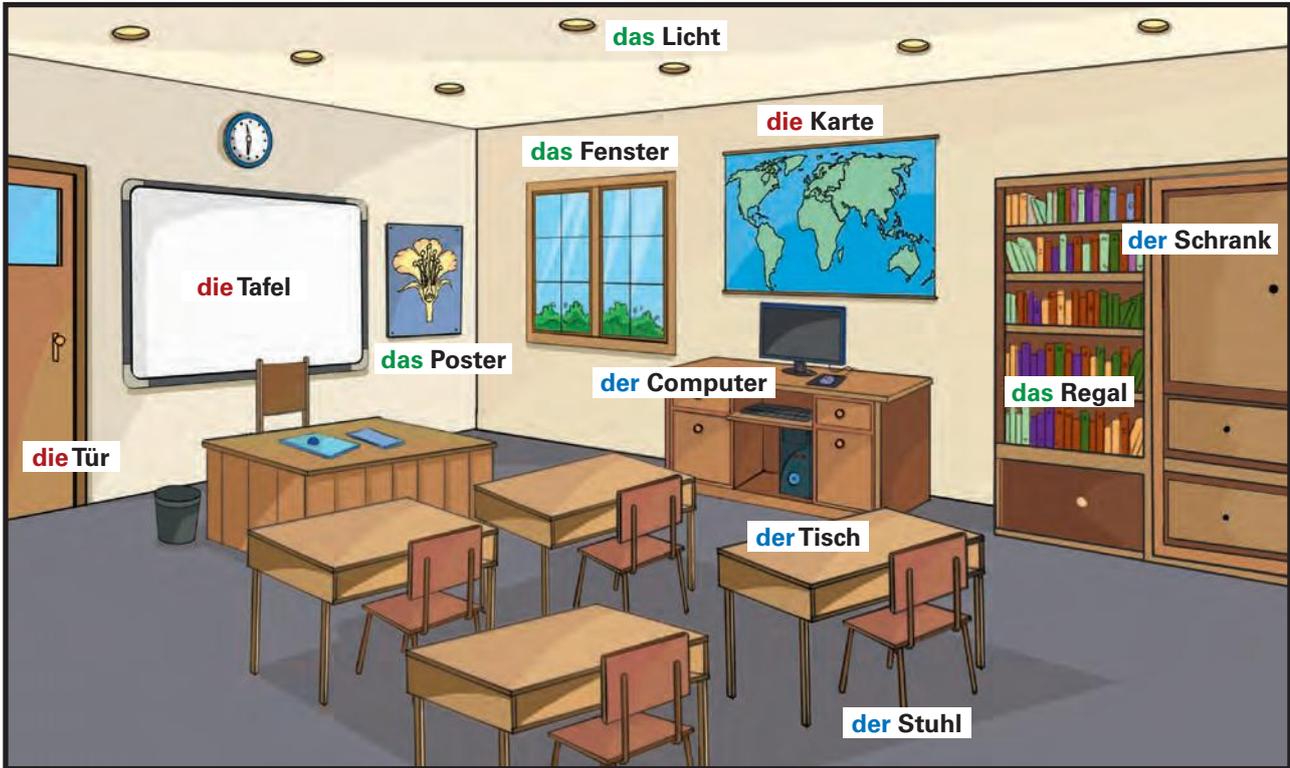
### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Who doesn't like doing homework?
- Who is the youngest of the three?
- What's the name of the nice teacher?
- Who likes learning languages?
- What other German-speaking country is mentioned?

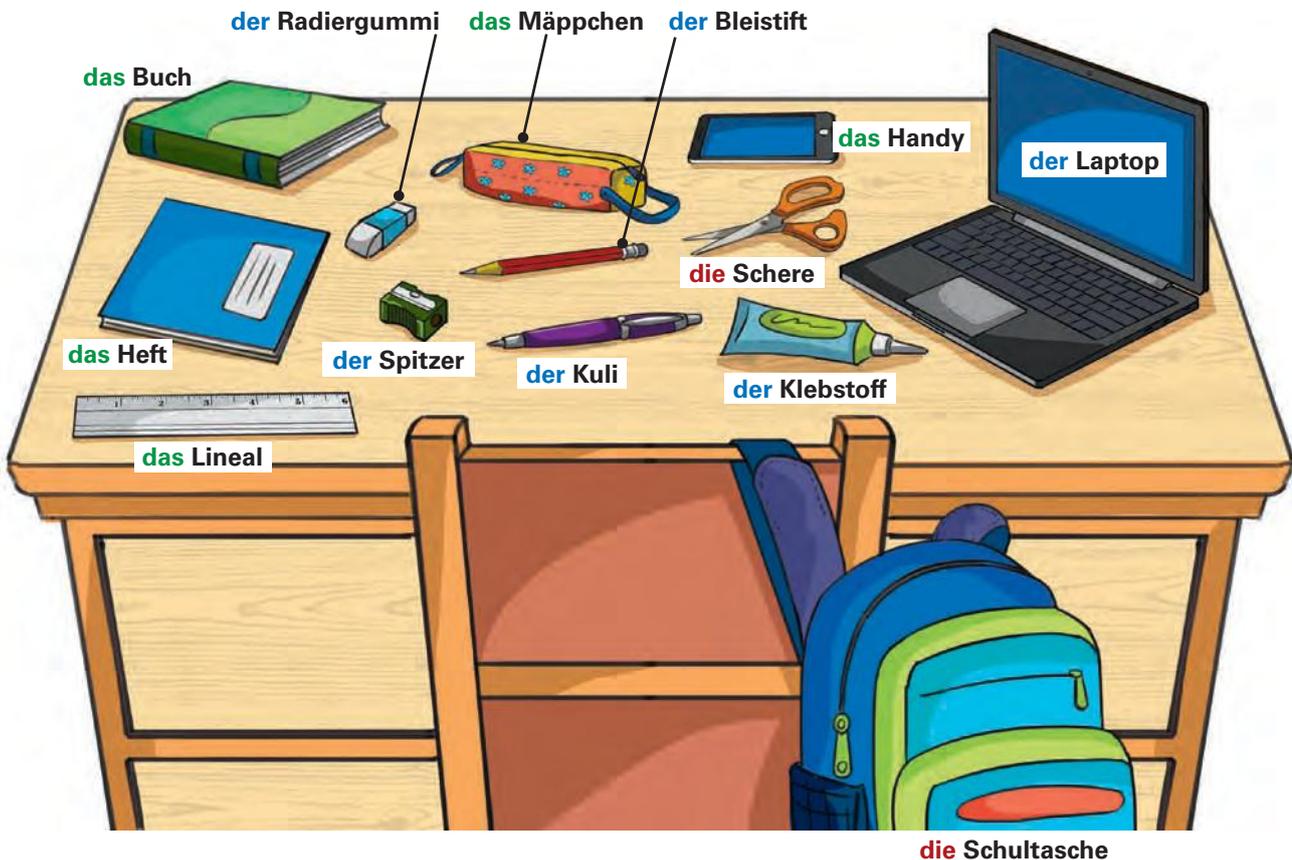
### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Thomas hat Mathe.
- 2 Tanja findet Physik super.
- 3 Detlef findet Pausen toll.
- 4 Thomas findet Biologie doof.
- 5 Am Freitag hat Tanja Kunst.



### What do you need?



**WHAT DO YOU THINK?**

- What do you notice about how 'the' is written in German?
- Can you identify something that all German nouns have in common?
- Do you notice any patterns?
- What rules does English have about nouns?
- Can you think of any examples in English where abbreviated forms of nouns are more common than the full name?

**So ist Deutsch!**

German nouns can be divided into three gender groups: *Maskulinum* (masculine = *der*), *Femininum* (feminine = *die*) and *Neutrum* (das = *neuter*).

When you learn a new word, you also need to learn the gender. Even inanimate objects have a gender. For example, *der Stuhl* (the chair) is masculine in German. There are some general rules about which nouns take which genders, but there are always a few exceptions.

**Maskulinum – der**

- nouns referring to male gender: *der Onkel* (uncle), *der Bruder* (brother), *der Vater* (father)
- months, days of the week, seasons
- nouns ending with these letters/suffixes: *-el*, *-en*, *-er*, *-ig*, *-ich*, *-ling*.  
Examples: *der Schlüssel* (key), *der Wagen* (car), *der Lehrling* (apprentice)

**Femininum – die**

- nouns referring to female gender: *die Schwester* (sister), *die Lehrerin* (female teacher), *die Tante* (aunt). **Exception:** *das Mädchen* (girl)
- nouns ending with these letters/suffixes: *-e*, *-ei*, *-ie*, *-age*, *-heit*, *-keit*, *-schaft*, *-ek*, *-eke*, *-ik*, *-in*, *-ion*, *-tät*, *-ung*, *-ur*. Examples: *die Freundschaft* (friendship), *die Panik* (panic), *die Universität* (university)
- most nouns that end in *-e*. **Exceptions:** *der Name* (name), *das Ende* (end)

**Neutrum – das**

- some nouns taken from another language: *das Restaurant*, *das Café*, *das Telefon*
- nouns ending with these letters/suffixes: *-tum*, *-ment*, *-eum*, *-ium*, *-um*, *-ett*, *-chen*, *-lein*.  
Examples: *das Museum* (museum), *das Kaninchen* (rabbit), *das Instrument* (instrument)



## 1 Personal pronouns

As you know, verb endings change according to the subject of the verb (who does the action). The subject can be a name (Tom), a noun (*der Lehrer*) or a personal pronoun (*du*). The following words are personal pronouns (words used in place of nouns).

ich	du	er	sie	es	wir	ihr	Sie	sie
I	you	he	she	it	we	you (plural)	you (formal)	they

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- How many ways can you say 'you' in German?
- What are the differences?
- How does this compare to English?
- What does the fact that German has a polite form of address for 'you' (*Sie*) tell you about German culture?

Look at the following sentences. How can you tell which form of *sie* is being used?

**Sie** kommt aus England.  
 Kommen **Sie** aus England?  
 Maria und Angelo sprechen italienisch. **Sie** kommen aus Italien.

Personal pronouns can be replaced by names or nouns.

**Er** ist nett. → **Christian** ist nett.  
**Sie** kommt aus Frankreich. → **Frau Bernadine** kommt aus Frankreich.

What do you notice about the verb endings used in the German sentences?

## 2 Verbs



Here are two more verbs for you to remember.

	finden (to find)	haben (to have)
ich	finde	habe
du	findest	hast
er/sie/es	findet	hat
wir	finden	haben
ihr	findet	habt
Sie/sie	finden	haben



**Wir finden  
 Naturwissenschaften  
 echt toll!**

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What patterns do you notice in the conjugation of these two verbs?
- Wie **findest** du Englisch? Ich **finde** Englisch interessant.
  - Wann **hast** du Deutsch? Ich **habe** Deutsch am Montag.



## Days of the week

die Wochentage	days of the week
am ...	on ...
Montag	Monday
Dienstag	Tuesday
Mittwoch	Wednesday
Donnerstag	Thursday
Freitag	Friday
Samstag	Saturday
Sonntag	Sunday
das Wochenende	weekend

## School subjects

die (Schul)fächer	(school) subjects
Chinesisch	Chinese
Englisch	English
Deutsch	German
Französisch	French
Indonesisch	Indonesian
Informatik	Information Technology (IT)
Italienisch	Italian
Japanisch	Japanese
Kunst	Arts
Latein	Latin
Mathe(mathik)	Maths (Mathematics)
Musik	Music
Naturwissenschaften	Science (Natural Sciences)
Biologie (Bio)	Biology
Chemie	Chemistry
Physik	Physics
Religion (Reli)	Religious Education
Sozialwissenschaften (Sozi)	Social Sciences
Erdkunde	Geography
Geschichte	History
Sozialkunde	Social Studies
Sport	Physical Education

## Numbers 1-20

die Zahlen	numbers
null	zero
eins	one
zwei	two
...	...
zwanzig	twenty

## Nouns

der Stundenplan (‘e)	timetable
der Unterricht (e)	lessons, classes
die Handynummer (n)	mobile number
die Pause (n)	recess
die Schule (n)	school
die Telefonnummer (n)	phone number
das Fach (‘er)	subject
das Handy (s)	mobile phone
das Lieblingsfach (‘er)	favourite subject
das Schulfach (‘er)	school subject

## Verbs

finden	to find
haben	to have

## Adjectives

blöd	stupid
doof	stupid
einfach	easy
interessant	interesting
kompliziert	complicated
(tod)langweilig	(dead) boring
super	great, super
toll	great, super
(un)wichtig	(un)important

## Adverbs

jetzt	now
später	later

## Question words

Wann?	When?
Was?	What?
Welche?	Which?
Wie?	How?
Woher (kommst du)?	Where (are you from)?

## Useful expressions

Aufpassen, bitte!	Pay attention, please!
Bis später!	See you later!
Gott sei Dank!	Thank goodness!

# Hobbys machen Spaß!

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ☑ say what sport/activity you do/like to do
- ☑ say what instruments you play/like to play
- ☑ say what you do on particular days.

You will also learn about:

- ☑ hobbies and sport in German-speaking countries.

People in German-speaking countries cherish free time, enjoying indoor and outdoor activities. Most students join clubs (*Vereine*) outside school. There are not as many inter-school sports competitions as in Australia and New Zealand. Popular hobbies include cycling, swimming, hiking, soccer, European handball, gymnastics, playing video games and, of course, hanging out with friends!

German children become independent from an early age and often travel alone on public transport or on their bike. Environmental awareness and keeping active are very important, and cities are well equipped with bike lanes. It is not compulsory to wear bike helmets in Germany.

Wir tragen keine Helme!



Shutterstock.com/turistman

Handball macht Spaß!

Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance archive



Das Musikfest ist echt toll!



Wir treffen uns gern mit Freunden.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Here is a notice that you might see on a noticeboard at school in Germany. What activity is being advertised? Can you work out the details?

#### Debattierclub

Wer – Jahrgang 9/10  
Wo – Englischraum 4B  
Wann – Donnerstag 14.00 – 15.30 Uhr  
Erstes Treffen – 22. September  
Leiter – Herr Borchert

Wir haben eine Theater AG!



Alamy Stock Photo/redsnapper

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Where do you stand on compulsory wearing of a bicycle helmet? Justify your answer.
- Think about Germany's weather. How could this impact on the activities that are popular?
- Did you know that the legal drinking age for beer and wine in Germany is 16? How does this compare to the country you live in? Which legal age is best, in your opinion?
- Would you prefer to be involved in school-organised extracurricular activities or have all your activities separate from school?

## SPORT IN DEUTSCHLAND!



Hamburg SV – Fußball ist unser Lieblingssport!



Ein Handballspiel ist nicht langweilig!

### Sport in Australien und Neuseeland

Australischer Fußball ist sehr beliebt.

Wir spielen oft Cricket in der Schule.

Rugby ist ein Wintersport in Australien und Neuseeland. Rugby ist super.

Radfahren, Golf, Schwimmen und Tennis sind beliebt.

### Sport in Deutschland, Österreich und der Schweiz

Fußball ist Nummer 1!

Wir spielen Handball in der Schule.

Eishockey ist ein Wintersport. Eishockey ist echt beliebt.

In Deutschland, Österreich und der Schweiz sind Radfahren, Golf, Schwimmen und auch Tennis beliebt.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Are you or any of your family members soccer fans? What do you know about German soccer?

European handball is very different from the game played at schools in Australia and New Zealand. It is an Olympic sport.

Deutscher Fußballbund (DFB) or German Soccer Federation is the largest sports organisation in Germany, with 6.3 million members.



Gatly Images/Alex Grimm - World Rugby

**Wir spielen Rugby!**



Alamy Stock Photo/ITAR-TASS News Agency

**Hockey auf dem Eis!**



Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance

**Fußball ist fantastisch!**



AEI Europe

**Wir gewinnen!**

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT Australischer Fußball und Rugby in Deutschland?**

You may be surprised to know that there are rugby and Australian Rules leagues in Germany. German-speaking countries don't distinguish between Rugby League and Rugby Union, therefore the word 'rugby' is used for both. Create a digital presentation or a poster showing your research into either Aussie Rules or rugby in Germany. Ensure you answer the following questions.

- What is the history of the sport in Germany? When was it first played?
- What are the names of the participating clubs and where are they located?
- What are their mascots and logos?
- When was the most recent grand final and what team won?
- Why do you think these foreign sports are played in Germany?
- Can you translate the following terms into German? The results, the semifinal, the grand final.



Julia and Anna chat with Christian and Max about what they are doing after school.

## Der Schulhof



## Die Turnhalle

6



## Das Café

7



## Später ...

8



9



10



11



## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Why can't Max come to handball training?
- 2 What are Anna, Julia and Christian doing after training?
- 3 Who are Nick and Jessie?
- 4 When are the Australians coming?
- 5 Who is texting Christian?

## 1 Talking about what you do



### Was machst du?



### MACH MIT!

#### What do you do?

- 1 With a partner, take turns asking each other *Was machst du?* and answering with one of the activities shown.
- 2 Do you notice any similarities between the way you say some hobbies in German and English?
- 3 Which of these hobbies do you do?

2 Talking about instruments you play



Spielst du ein Instrument?

Wir spielen **Trompete**.

Ich spiele **Flöte**.

Ja, ich spiele **Klavier**.

Ja, ich spiele **Saxophon**.

Ja, ich spiele **Geige**.

Ja, ich spiele **Schlagzeug**.

Nein, wir **singen im Chor**.

Ich spiele **Gitarre**.

Nein, aber wir **hören gern Musik**.

Ja, ich spiele **Klarinette**.

**MACH MIT!**  
**Favourite activities**  
 State your favourite activity from this page to a friend and then ask which activity they do, showing them the activities above to choose from.

3 Talking about what you do during the week



Meine Woche

Was machst du am Montag?

Und am Dienstag?

Und am Mittwoch?

Und am Donnerstag?

Und am Freitag?

Und am Wochenende?

Am Montag spiele ich **Korbball**.

Am Dienstag **tanze** ich.

Am Mittwoch **gehe** ich **schwimmen**.

Am Donnerstag spiele ich **Klavier**.

Am Freitag **gehe** ich **einkaufen**.

Am Wochenende **mache** ich **Hausaufgaben**.

**MACH MIT!**  
**Survey your classmates!**  
 Ask five students in your class what they do on certain days. Use the conversation to help you.  
 See the *Sprache und Kultur* section for information about how you can start German sentences with different elements.

MACH MIT!

Survey your classmates!

Ask five students in your class what they do on certain days. Use the conversation to help you.

See the *Sprache und Kultur* section for information about how you can start German sentences with different elements.

Name	am Montag	am Dienstag	am Mittwoch	am Donnerstag	am Freitag	am Wochenende
Elise	Hockey					
...						

## What's the rule?

Read this conversation to find the position of *gern* in a German sentence. Also, see if you notice anything about how nouns are written in German.



## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Find the sentences in the conversation that would be translated as follows:

- I like to do sport.
- I like to play volleyball.
- I like to play basketball.
- No, I don't like doing homework.

What word do we have to put before *gern* to say we 'don't like' to do something? Look at the last sentence for a hint.

## What's different about German?

In *Auf einen Blick* at the end of this chapter, you will see that *gern* is translated as 'gladly, with pleasure'. It does not literally translate as 'like'. *Mögen* means 'to like'. You will be introduced to this later in the book.

Wir **mögen** Basketball. (We like basketball.)

*Gern* is used with a verb; not on its own.

Wir **spielen gern** Basketball. (We like to play basketball.)

Nouns always start with a capital letter in German (*Volleyball*, *Basketball*, *Hausaufgaben*), even if they are not at the beginning of a sentence. However, the German pronoun *ich* is never capitalised in the middle of a sentence; only if it is at the start of the sentence.

Alle Chorleute!  
Chorprobe ist am  
Donnerstag, nicht  
am Mittwoch!  
Herr Weiss

### SCHULKONZERT

Wann? Am Freitag um 19 Uhr  
Wo? Aula  
Was? Die Schulband und  
der Jazzchor spielen Jazz,  
singen und tanzen.

### SPORTTAG

Am Mittwoch ist Sporttag.  
Schüler und Lehrer machen  
mit. Wir spielen Tischtennis,  
Basketball, Fußball und  
Völkerball. Das Training ist  
am Montag in der Sporthalle.  
Sportlehrerin Frau Schumacher

### HANDBALLTRAINING

Das Handballtraining für die  
8. Klasse ist am Dienstag nach  
der Schule. Wir trainieren für das  
Sportfest am Wochenende.  
Matthias

### 5. Klasse

Wie findet ihr Mathe?  
Kompliziert? Langweilig?  
Ich auch, aber es ist wichtig. Wir machen  
Mathe am Montag nach der Schule.  
Diana, Klasse 11  
Texte Handy: 0175-5890321

### SCHULDISKO!

Am Samstag ist die  
Schuldisko für die 7., 8. und 9. Klasse!  
Coole Musik von DJ Alex.  
Um 19 Uhr in der Aula.  
Paul, Malte und Lena  
9. Klasse

Mathe Diana  
0175-5890321  
Mathe Diana  
0175-5890321  
Mathe Diana  
0175-5890321  
Mathe Diana  
0175-5890321

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Chorprobe ist am Wochenende.
- 2 Das Schulkonzert ist in der Aula.
- 3 Der Sporttag ist am Montag.
- 4 Die Schuldisko beginnt um 9 Uhr.
- 5 Diana findet Mathe wichtig.
- 6 Das Sportfest ist am Freitag.

Find evidence in the texts to justify your answers!

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Does your school have a student noticeboard? What sort of information does it cover?
- How similar are the types of events on *das schwarze Brett* to the activities at your school?
- Does your school participate in things that students in German-speaking countries would not see in their school?
- Draw a picture of an event from your region and label it with German keywords.

# Sprache und Kultur

Each language has rules about word order in sentences, but some languages have more flexibility in how sentences can be constructed. For example, in English we can say, 'I play basketball on Saturday', but we wouldn't say, 'Basketball play I on Saturday'. Unless we wanted to sound like Yoda from *Star Wars*, of course!

Let's look at two examples of German questions and the possible answers.

## Wann spielst du Basketball?

Ich **spiele** **am Samstag** Basketball.

**Am Samstag** **spiele** **ich** Basketball.

Basketball **spiele** **ich** **am Samstag**.

## Wann hast du Deutsch?

Ich **habe** **am Dienstag** Deutsch.

**Am Dienstag** **habe** **ich** Deutsch.

Deutsch **habe** **ich** **am Dienstag**.



Alamy Stock Photo/Eldad Carim

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What do you notice about the German responses?
- Why do you think you can answer a question several ways in German?
- What are you doing by starting the answer with a personal pronoun (*ich*), day of the week (*am Samstag*) or activity (*Basketball*)?
- Do we start sentences in different ways in English? Give examples.

## So ist Deutsch!



The standard word order in a simple German sentence is:

**subject – verb – rest of the sentence**

Examples:

Ich **spiele** ein Instrument. (I play an instrument.)

Miriam **geht** zur Schule. (Miriam goes to school.)

The verb is in the **second position**. We use the term 'second position' as opposed to 'the second word', because in a sentence such as *Am Freitag habe ich Tischtennisstraining*, the second word is actually *Freitag*.

Word order in German is more flexible than in English. The element at the start of the sentence is emphasised, as we have seen in 'What do you think?' on the previous page. This rule only applies to some elements in a German sentence, such as expressions of time and place. If you want to be safe, stick with the standard word order!

German standard word order	German varied word order
Er spielt <b>am Sonntag</b> Fußball.	<b>Am Sonntag</b> spielt er Fußball.
Julia hat <b>heute</b> Mathe.	<b>Heute</b> hat Julia Mathe.
Ihr habt <b>am Donnerstag</b> Chinesisch.	<b>Chinesisch</b> habt ihr <b>am Donnerstag</b> .

How would you say what these students are doing, using either the standard or varied word order?



Am Dienstag



Am Mittwoch



Am Freitag



Heute



Am Samstag



Am Wochenende



## 1 Verbs

All verbs (actions) are either in **infinitive** form or conjugated form, showing **stem + verb ending**. The verb ending changes according to the subject. Remember that *sein* changes in a different way.

Wir **gehen** jetzt einkaufen.  
Ich **kenne** die Handynummer nicht.  
Er **singt** im Chor.  
Du **hörst** gern Musik.

Example:

infinitive = **machen**

stem = **mach**

'ich' verb ending = -e, **mache**

	<b>machen</b> (to do)	<b>spielen</b> (to play)	<b>gehen</b> (to go)	<b>kennen</b> (to know)	<b>singen</b> (to sing)	<b>hören</b> (to listen to)
ich	mache	spiele	gehe	kenne	singe	höre
du	<b>machst</b>	spielst	gehst	kennst	singst	hörst
er/sie/es	macht	spielt	geht	kennt	singt	hört
wir	<b>machen</b>	spielen	gehen	kennen	singen	hören
ihr	macht	spielt	geht	kennt	singt	hört
sie/Sie	<b>machen</b>	spielen	gehen	kennen	singen	hören

Examples:

Tom **spielt** Tennis. (Tom **plays** tennis.)  
Wir **gehen** zur Schule. (We **go** to school.)  
Julia und Maria **singen** gut. (Julia and Maria **sing** well.)

## 2 Questions

The standard word order in a question that starts with a question word is:

**question word – verb – subject – rest of the sentence?**

Examples:

**Was spielst du gern?**

Ich spiele gern Trompete.

**Wie findet Max Völkerball?**

Max findet Völkerball doof.

The standard word order in a question without a question word is:

**verb – subject – rest of the sentence?**

Examples:

**Spielst du ein Instrument?** Nein, ich singe im Chor.

**Geht sie gern einkaufen?** Ja, sie geht gern einkaufen.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Compare the word order in the German questions with the word order in these English questions:

→ Do you play a musical instrument?

→ Do you like to go shopping?



## Hobbies and activities

Ich spiele ...	I play ...
am Computer	on the computer
australischen Fußball	Australian Rules football
Fußball	soccer
Korbball	netball
Kricket	cricket
Tischtennis	table tennis
Völkerball	dodgeball
Ich spiele ...	I play ...
Flöte	flute
Geige	violin
Gitarre	guitar
Klarinette	clarinet
Klavier	piano
Saxophon	saxophone
Schlagzeug	drums
Trompete	trumpet
Ich gehe ...	I go ...
einkaufen	shopping
schwimmen	swimming
zum Training	to practice/training
ins Kino	to the movies
Ich mache ...	I do ...
Hausaufgaben	homework
nichts Besonderes	nothing much

## Nouns

der Australier (-)	Australian (male)
der Chor (e)	choir
der Flughafen (n)	airport
der Schulhof (e)	school yard
die Aula (-)	assembly hall
die Australierin (nen)	Australian (female)
die Bandprobe (n)	band rehearsal
die Chorprobe (n)	choir rehearsal
die Hausaufgaben	homework
die Party (s)	party
die SMS (-)	SMS, text message
die Turnhalle (n)	gymnasium
das Café (s)	café
das Instrument (e)	instrument
das Sportzeug	sports gear
das Training	practice, training

## Verbs

gehen	to go
hören	to listen to
Ich höre Musik.	I listen to music.
kennen	to know
machen	to do
reiten	to ride (a horse)
schwimmen	to swim
singen	to sing
Ich singe im Chor.	I sing in a choir.
spielen	to play
tanzen	to dance
trainieren	to train
turnen	to do gymnastics

## Adverbs

auch	also
gleich	immediately, now
gern	gladly, with pleasure
gern machen	to like doing
Ich singe gern.	I like to sing.
nicht gern machen	to dislike doing
Ich singe nicht gern.	I dislike singing.

## Useful expressions

Ach ...	Oh ...
Ach, da seid ihr ja!	Oh, there you are!
Gute Idee!	Good idea!
Habt ihr Durst?	Are you thirsty?
He, ihr Zwei!	Hey, you two!
Ich auch.	Me too.
Ich bin schon gespannt.	I can't wait.
Ja, gerne.	Yes, gladly. (With pleasure.)
Ja, und wie!	Yes, absolutely!
Komm!	Come on!
Kommt ihr mit?	Are you coming too? (Do you want to come?)
Mach schnell!	Hurry up!
Mensch, bin ich kaputt!	Gee, I'm exhausted!
Schade ...	Unfortunately ...
Von wem?	From whom?
Was ist denn hier los?	What's going on here?

# Meine Familie, deine Familie

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ say 'my', 'your', 'a' or 'one' and 'no' or 'none'
- ✓ form plurals of nouns
- ✓ use apostrophes
- ✓ describe your family and other people's families.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ different types of families in German-speaking countries
- ✓ the multicultural nature of modern Germany
- ✓ family traditions and celebrations.

Families in Germany are diverse and multicultural. One in five people has origins in other countries. There is an increasing proportion of single-parent and blended families, including those with same-sex or unmarried parents. Unlike in former generations, multi-generational families living in the same house are rare, and often parents are older when they have their first child. These days, women are on average 30 years old and men 35 when they become parents. The traditional roles of men working and women staying at home are outdated, with the majority of parents both working. How does this compare to your community?

Ich bin ein  
Einzelkind. Und du?

Gerty Ineess/Westend61

Meine Familie ist groß.  
Ich habe vier Geschwister.



Alamy Stock Photo/Philip Gagne

Meine Familie kommt aus der Türkei.



Getty Images/Jasmin Merdan

Ich habe eine Patchworkfamilie. Ich habe eine  
Stiefmutter, einen Stiefbruder und eine Halbschwester.



Alamy Stock Photo/Julia Frazier Photography

Wir haben eine  
Regenbogenfamilie. Unsere  
Eltern heißen Mitch und David.



Getty Images/Maskot

Wir haben eine Großfamilie  
mit drei Generationen.



Getty Images/xavierarnau

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

People's ideas of what makes a family vary across countries and cultures.

- What does the word 'family' mean to you?
- What types of families do you see in the photos?
- Is your family similar to any of these families?
- Do some of your family members live in other countries?

### LEISURE TIME AND CELEBRATIONS

People in Germany love to spend time together at weekends, watching television, playing sport or going for walks together. Traditional family celebrations, such as Christmas (*Weihnachten*), Easter (*Ostern*) and New Year's Eve (*Silvester*), are very important. Other communities, such as the Turkish community, also have many important celebrations and festivals, such as Ramadan, an annual religious festival.

Getty Images/Niedring/Drenthwert



iStock.com/flavapixel

Shutterstock.com/Monkey Business Images



iStock.com/xavierarnau

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What activities and celebrations are shown in the images?
- What does your family do when you spend time together?
- What does your family think of as a special celebration?
- Do some research. Choose a special festival or event and find out how German families celebrate it. How does this chosen festival or event compare with your family's celebrations of special occasions?

**DEUTSCHE FAMILIENNAMEN**

In Germany, there are about 850 000 different family names (*Familiennamen*) or surnames (*Nachnamen*). The most common surname is Müller (meaning 'miller'); it is shared by about 700 000 people. The second and third most common surnames are Schmidt (smith) and Meier (an old German word referring to a manager of a nobleman's estate). Occupational names form the largest group of German surnames because, when surnames first came into use in the early Middle Ages, they were a simple way of identifying people. Other occupational names include Schneider (tailor), Fischer (fisherman) and Weber (weaver).

**WHAT DO YOU THINK?**

- Do some research to find out the most common surnames or family names in your culture.
- What is the history or origin of these surnames?

**PROJEKTE**

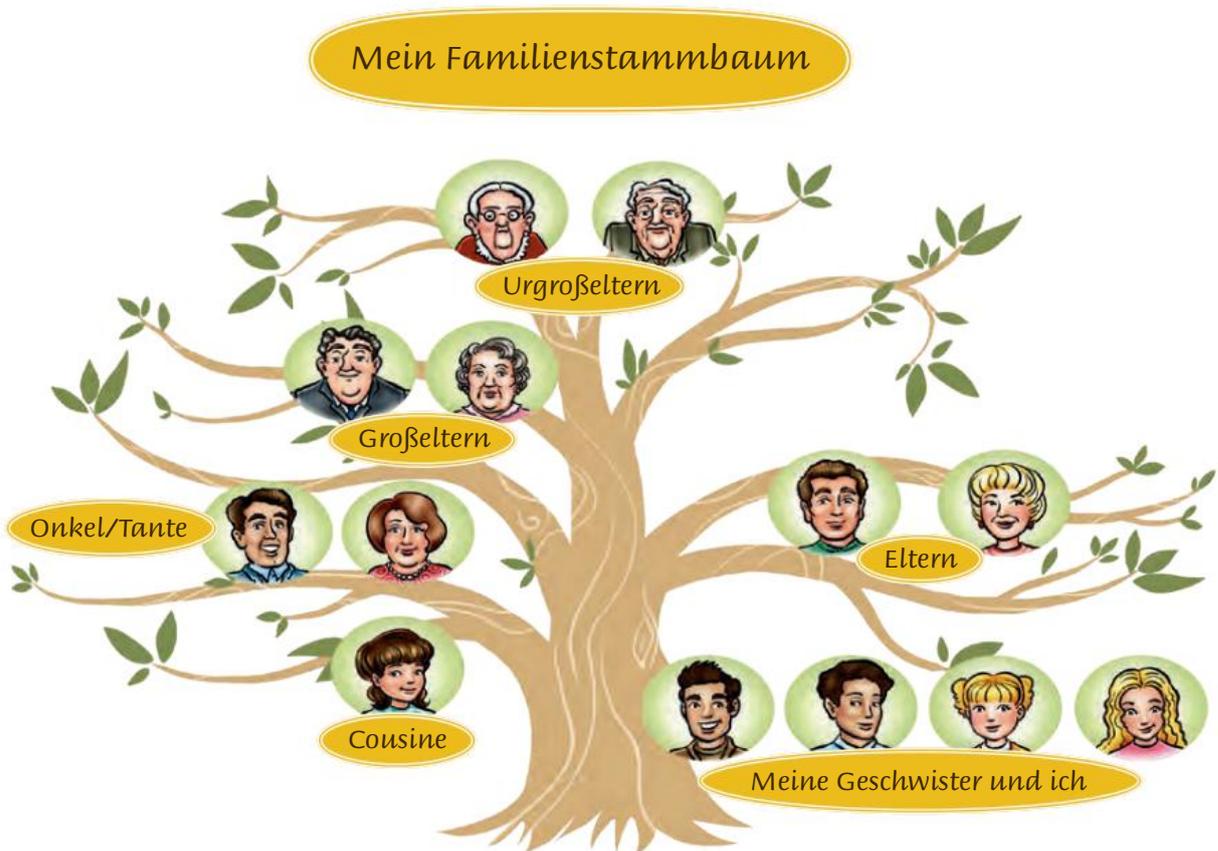
Create a digital presentation or a poster using your research on one of the following.

**PROJEKT 1 Family photo album**

- Create a photo album that includes pictures of you and your family. Label the photos with your relatives' names and their relationship to you.
- Describe your family members in terms of their age, hobbies and personality.
- Display different family occasions in your photo album.

**PROJEKT 2 Family tree**

- Choose a famous person from a German-speaking background and create their family tree with labelled pictures or drawings. See the example below.





Max and Anna are looking forward to the arrival of Nick and Jessie, two Australian exchange students, who will be staying with them.





**WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?**

**True or false?**

- 1 Nick's brothers are 18 and 13 years old.
- 2 Boris is Max's younger brother.
- 3 Jessie has one brother.
- 4 Jessie and Nick are very sporty.
- 5 Max and Anna are both present to greet the Australians.

## 1 Talking about family



### Die Familie Hayak

#### DIE GROBELTERN



#### DIE KINDER



#### DIE VERWANDTEN



### MACH MIT!

#### Pairwork

Look at the Hayak family photo album. Take turns to act out versions of the following conversation with a partner. One of you will play the role of Sibel, the other will play Anna.



Wer ist das?

Wo wohnen deine **Großeltern**?

Wie heißen sie?

Ist das dein **Bruder Ahmet**?

Wie alt ist er?

Und wer ist das?



Das ist mein **Großvater** und das ist meine **Großmutter**.

Sie wohnen in der Türkei. Sie haben fünfzehn **Enkelkinder**! Und das sind meine **Eltern**.

Mein **Vater** heißt Deniz und meine **Mutter** heißt Angela.

Ja, das ist Ahmet. Hier ist meine **Schwester**, Pinar, und das ist mein **Bruder Metin**. Er ist noch ein **Baby**.

Er ist fast ein Jahr alt.

Das ist mein **Onkel Ali** und meine **Tante Keziban**. Sie kommen aus der Türkei, aber sie wohnen in Köln. Das ist mein **Cousin Volkan**. Er ist zehn. Und das ist meine **Cousine Meliz**. Sie ist fünf Jahre alt.

**MACH MIT!****Pairwork**

Practise the next dialogue in which Sibel and Anna change roles.

Und deine **Familie**, Anna?  
Hast du **Geschwister**?



Nein, ich habe keinen **Bruder** und keine **Schwester**. Ich bin ein **Einzelkind**. Hier ist ein Foto. Das bin ich und das ist meine **Mama**. Meine **Eltern** sind geschieden. Mein **Papa** wohnt in Zürich. Meine **Oma** wohnt in Basel. Mein **Opa** ist schon tot.



Mama und ich



Papa



Oma

**MACH MIT!****Pairwork**

Bring family photos and create new dialogues with a partner. For example:

Tag! Ich heie Joshua. Das ist mein Vater.  
Er heit James und er ist 44 Jahre alt ...

**2 Numbers 21–100**

21	einundzwanzig	30	dreiig
22	zweiundzwanzig	40	vierzig
23	dreiundzwanzig	50	fnfzig
24	vierundzwanzig	60	sechzig
25	fnfundzwanzig	70	siebzig
26	sechsendzwanzig	80	achtzig
27	siebenundzwanzig	90	neunzig
28	achtundzwanzig	100	hundert (oder einhundert)
29	neunundzwanzig		

**MACH MIT!****Group work**

Play lotto in a group. Print lotto cards with nine numbers on them in a grid. Put small cards with numbers up to 100 in a bag and a group member draws them out and reads them out in German. When someone has all the numbers, they call out 'Lotto'.

## What's different about German?

When writing in German, we use punctuation such as full stops, commas, question marks and exclamation marks in much the same way as in English.

Direct speech in German has a different method of presentation to English. Compare these examples:

Anna sagt: „Du bist toll!“  
Anna says, 'You're great!'

Note the difference in quotation marks between German and English.

## How do apostrophes work in German?

Using apostrophes correctly in German can also be challenging. Let's compare it with how apostrophes are used in English. Look at these sentences to notice something interesting.

Max, du hast eine E-Mail von Nicks Vater.  
Wie geht's?  
Das ist Annas Mama.

### LET'S TRANSLATE!

With a partner, translate the sentences into English. What happens when you have to use apostrophes?

## What's the rule?



Look at these sentences to see if you can discover something about German.



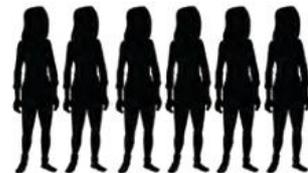
Das ist ein Mann.



Das sind drei Männer.



Das ist eine Frau.



Das sind sechs Frauen.



Das ist ein Kind.



Das sind zwei Kinder.



Das ist ein Baby.



Das sind fünf Babys.

What differences do you notice? Why do you think this might be? Does this match anything that happens in English?

Now look at the following sentences. Can you discover something more about German?

Das ist mein Bruder.  
Das ist meine Schwester.  
Das ist mein Baby.  
Das sind meine Eltern.  
Ich habe einen Bruder.  
Ich habe keine Schwestern.

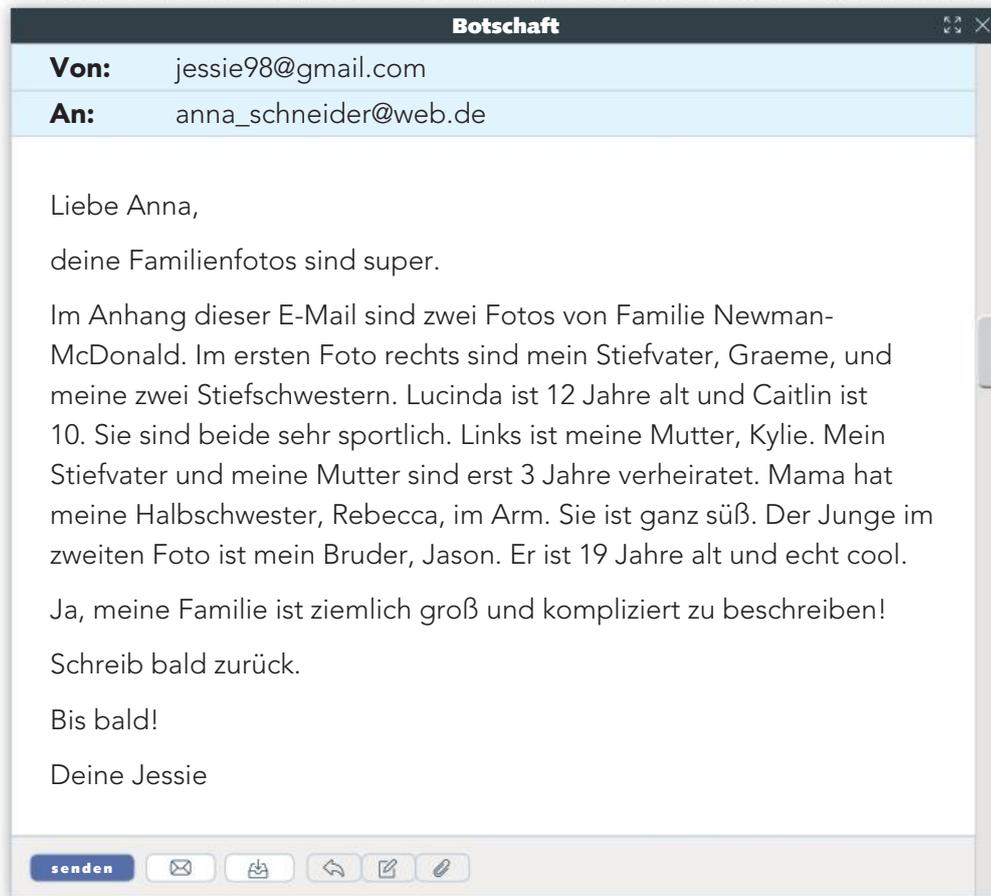
### LET'S TRANSLATE!

Is a literal (word-for-word) translation possible for the sentences below? What makes you say that? Which words are hard to translate literally? How are they used? Can you think of an equivalent word or expression in English to convey the same feeling?

→ Du hast doch Schule!

→ Nun hört aber auf!

## Eine E-Mail von Jessie



### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Why does Jessie describe her family as *kompliziert* (complicated)? Do you agree with her? Why or why not?
- How does Jessie's family compare with your family or the families you know?

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Jessies Familie ist klein.
- 2 Jessie hat drei Schwestern.
- 3 Jessie findet Rebecca nicht süß.
- 4 Jessies Bruder heißt Graeme.
- 5 Jessies Stiefschwestern sind sportlich.
- 6 Kylie ist die Stiefmutter von Caitlin und Lucinda.

## So ist Deutsch!



Family vocabulary is similar in English and German. Look at the list of family members:

der Vater  
die Mutter  
der Bruder  
die Schwester  
der Onkel  
die Tante  
der Cousin  
die Cousine

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What do the names mean? Was it easy to work out their meaning? Why?
- What names do we use for parents, grandparents, aunts and uncles?

In German, people call their mothers *Mutti* or *Mama*, not *Mutter*. They call their fathers *Vati* or *Papa*, not *Vater*.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Read this short paragraph about a family and discuss what you have learnt about the people being described in it.

Mein Name ist Karl Schumacher. Meine Familie ist groß. Meine Mutter heißt Heidi und mein Vater heißt Jonas. Meine Schwester heißt Susi. Meine vier Brüder sind Max, Stefan, Tim und Christian. Unser Haus ist ein Einfamilienhaus in Potsdam. Meine Großeltern wohnen in Berlin.



Shutterstock.com/Robert Kneschke

- How would you describe the family?
- In what ways is this family similar to and different from yours?
- Why do you think the family lives in an *Einfamilienhaus*?
- How would you describe an *Einfamilienhaus* to someone who doesn't understand what it is?
- Write down any words or expressions that are similar to English. How does this help you in your studies?

## Eine E-Mail



Liebe



Lieber



Liebe

**Botschaft**

**Von:** jessie98@gmail.com  
**An:** anna\_schneider@web.de

Liebe Anna,  
 Danke für deine Familienfotos. ← **Anfang**  
 Hier ist ein Foto von Familie Newman-McDonald ... ← **Text**  
 Schreib bald eine E-Mail. Ein Brief dauert zu lange. ← **Ende**  
 Bis bald, ← **Gruß**  
 deine Jessie

senden



deine



dein



eure

**MACH MIT!**

Rewrite this email in your notebooks, addressing it to different people and changing the beginning, content and so on. What do you have to consider when starting and ending your email? You can also put yourself in Jessie's place and describe your own family.

Shutterstock.com/goedluz





## 1 Singular and plural

Nouns have two forms: **singular** for one person or thing, and **plural** for more than one.

In English, an 's' is usually added to make a noun plural, although sometimes 'es' or 'ies' is added.

book – books, church – churches, hobby – hobbies

Some nouns have irregular plurals.

child – children, tooth – teeth, sheep – sheep

In German, to change a singular noun to a plural noun you generally add one of the following endings: **-s, -n, -er** or **-e**.

das Baby → die Babys  
 die Tante → die Tanten  
 das Kind → die Kinder  
 der Brief → die Briefe

Some nouns change their vowels, as well as their endings.

der Bruder → die Brüder (Umlaut)  
 der Sohn → die Söhne (Umlaut + e)  
 die Tochter → die Töchter (Umlaut)

Some singular nouns do not change at all in the plural.

der Onkel → die Onkel

## 2 Indefinite articles and possessive adjectives



Nouns are often preceded by an **indefinite article** or a **possessive adjective** (also known as a possessive determiner). Their form is determined by the noun they refer to, and whether the noun is singular or plural.

	Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
a, an, one	ein Bruder	eine Frau	ein Kind	–
no, not any	kein Bruder	keine Frau	kein Kind	keine Eltern
my	mein Bruder	meine Frau	mein Kind	meine Eltern
your	dein Bruder	deine Frau	dein Kind	deine Eltern

The indefinite article (*ein, kein*) or possessive adjective (*mein, dein*) changes for the *Maskulinum* (masculine) when you use verbs such as *haben* or *finden*.

		Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
a, an, one	Ich habe ...	einen Bruder	eine Frau	ein Kind	–
no, not any	Sie hat ...	keinen Bruder	keine Frau	kein Kind	keine Kinder



## Family members

der Brief (e)	letter
der Bruder (-)	brother
der Cousin (s)	male cousin
der Flughafen (-)	airport
der Großvater (-)	grandfather, grandad
der Opa (s), Opi (s)	granddad, pop
der Halbbruder (-)	half-brother
der Mann (-er)	man, husband
der Neffe (-n)	nephew
der Onkel (-)	uncle
der Sohn (-e)	son
der Stiefbruder (-)	stepbrother
der Stiefvater (-)	stepfather
der Vater (-)	father
der Papa (s), Papi (s)	dad, daddy
die Cousine (n)	female cousin
die E-Mail (s)	email
die Familie (n)	family
die Frau (en)	woman, wife
die Großmutter (-)	grandmother
die Oma (s), Omi (s)	grandma, gran, nan
die Halbschwester (n)	half-sister
die Mutter (-)	mother
die Mama (s), Mutti (s)	mum, mummy
die Nichte (n)	niece
die Schwester (n)	sister
die Stiefmutter (-)	stepmother
die Stiefschwester (n)	stepsister
die Tante (n)	aunt
die Tochter (-)	daughter
das Baby (s)	baby
das Foto (s)	photo
das Kind (er)	child
das Einzelkind (er)	only child
das Enkelkind (er)	grandchild

### Plural nouns only

die Eltern	parents
die Geschwister	siblings
die Großeltern	grandparents

## Useful expressions

Du gehst mir auf die Nerven!	You are getting on my nerves!
Hau ab!	Go away!
Liebe ..., Lieber ...	Dear ...
Liebe Anna	Dear Anna
Lieber Christian	Dear Christian
Liebe Grüße	Kind regards
Mensch!	Gee!
Nun hört aber auf!	Stop that!
Wie alt bist du?	How old are you?
Ich bin ... Jahre alt.	I am ... years old.
Willkommen!	Welcome!

## Adjectives

alt	old
geschieden	divorced
tot	dead
verheiratet	married

## Adverbs

(nicht) fair	(not) fair
fast	almost, nearly
hier	here
noch	still
schon	already
total	totally

## Indefinite articles and possessive adjectives

ein/eine	a, an, one
kein/keine	no, not any
mein/meine	my
dein/deine	your

# Die Klamotten

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ talk about what someone is wearing
- ✓ describe a variety of clothing items
- ✓ give your opinion about clothing and appearance.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ modern fashion in Germany
- ✓ types of clothing stores in Germany
- ✓ traditional clothing in Germany.

While there isn't an obvious German 'dress code' in modern Germany, Germans have a good sense of fashion and like following the trends of each season. Germans shop for fashion in shopping malls, where many of the global department stores can be found, as well as in quirky boutiques in arcades or on the main streets.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Pick n Weight is a clothing store in Berlin that sells fashion by weight.

- What would be the advantages and disadvantages of a shop like this?
- Would you like to shop there?
- Do you think this style of shop would suit the area you live in? Why or why not?

Traditional clothes such as *eine Lederhose*, *ein Dirndl* or *eine Tracht* are now mainly worn for festivals and special celebrations.

Shutterstock.com/Anastasia Petrova



Shutterstock.com/dvoevnora

Alamy Stock Photo/reallifephotos

Shutterstock.com/Pineop76

Unser Outfit ist locker-lässig: Jeans oder Shorts und ein T-Shirt.



Wir sind Hipster. Unser Outfit ist cool.



Shutterstock.com/Axel Bueckert

Ich trage oft eine Hose und ein T-Shirt und Turnschuhe.



iStock.com/franckreporter

iStock.com/M\_a\_y\_a

Im Winter tragen wir immer einen Mantel, einen Schal, eine Mütze, Stiefel und Handschuhe.



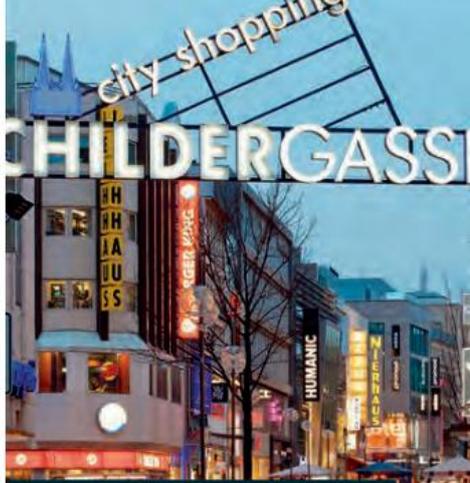
Wo kauft man Klamotten?

Alamy Stock Photo/Iain Masterton



Im Kaufhaus. Shoppen im KaDeWe in Berlin ist echt cool.

Alamy Stock Photo/Joern Sackermann



Eine Einkaufstraße mit Boutiquen



Shutterstock.com/hanohiki

Der Flohmarkt im Mauerpark, Berlin

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Who has the most influence on fashion? Friends? Family? Celebrities?
- Is fashion in the modern world the same everywhere you go?
- Do only Germans wear a *Tracht*?
- Why would people wear traditional clothes?
- Does your community have traditional clothes? Describe them. When (on what occasions) are they worn?
- There is a push in some German schools to introduce a uniform. Do you think this would be a good idea?

There are many fashion styles in Germany, from classy business people in dark suits to hipsters wearing their grandmother's boots. Some people dress up to go out to the theatre or opera, but this is not universal. Often, seasonal trends are followed by a majority of people.

Even though Germany doesn't have the same fashion reputation as other European countries, its fashion scene is growing. Germany has many famous designer labels, and Berlin hosts a fashion week twice a year.

Do you recognise any of the following?



Getty Images/Peter White

**Karl Lagerfeld was born in Hamburg and is a famous fashion designer.**



Shutterstock.com/360b

Shutterstock.com/kitlau



Shutterstock.com/M DOGAN



**Do you own any shoes with these brand names?**

### SEASONAL CLOTHES

Clothes vary according to the four distinct seasons Germany experiences and depend on the areas people come from. German winters can be bitterly cold and almost all regions experience snow. Warm coats, scarves and boots are a must. However, it might be bone-chillingly cold in Hamburg, yet milder down south in the Black Forest area.

The summer months tend to be warm and sunny, although wet weather is also common, necessitating an umbrella and raincoat.

### SOME POPULAR AND UNPOPULAR CUSTOMS

All German-speaking countries have the most restricted shopping hours in Europe. Most shops are open from 9 a.m. until 6.30 p.m. on weekdays and until 2 p.m. on Saturdays, due to a strict 'store closing law' (*Ladenschlussgesetz*). Some small shops in country towns might also be closed for an hour or two over midday. On Sundays and public holidays shops remain closed.

In 1989, the 'long Thursday' (*der lange Donnerstag*) was introduced in Germany. On that one day of the week, stores are allowed to remain open until 8.30 p.m.

There are exceptions for some specialty shops and during special times of the year. Can you think what shops these might be and when they would need extended opening hours?



Getty Images/Amanda Edwards

**Germans wear slippers at home, such as these Birkenstock slippers.**

**Carnival in Cologne. People dress up for parties and street parades.**



Shutterstock.com/loLab

## TRACHTEN

*Trachten* are traditional clothes that are mainly worn in German-speaking regions such as Bavaria, Austria and South Tyrol.

The wearing of a *Tracht* helped identify a person's standing in society. It allowed people to know certain things about another, such as their marital status, their place of origin and also their trade. The way the clothing was worn changed in subtle ways according to these details.



This *Tracht* is worn in the Black Forest in the south of Germany.

Alamy Stock Photo/Kuttig - Travel



Dressed up in *Dirndl* und *Lederhosen* for a dance

istock.com/filmfoto



*Voxclub*, a popular German folk band

Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance

Costumes worn by professional guilds, habits of religious orders and the garments of some occupational groups, such as nurses, are also called *Tracht*. Here is a family group wearing the carpenter's *Tracht*.



Shutterstock.com/Per-Boge

## PROJEKTE

### PROJEKT 1 Trachten

Use the internet to find out more about *Trachten* and create a digital presentation. Include the following:

- Define a *Tracht* and its historical significance.
- Give examples of two to three different *Trachten* in Germany and where they are worn.
- Give an example of how, in former times, an item of traditional clothing helped identify a person's status in society. (Hint: Find out the significance of the red pompoms on the Black Forest hat of the girl from the Black Forest.)
- Explore the tradition of *Dirndlspringen*.
- Find out about the folk group *Voxclub*.
- Give a few examples of traditional costumes in other parts of the world.

### PROJEKT 2 Karneval in Deutschland

Read about carnival in Germany in *Klasse Kultur 2* and search online to find out more about it. Create a digital presentation for the class. Include the following:

- The origins of *Karneval*.
- Find out in which parts of Germany it is celebrated. How does it differ in different regions?
- Find examples of some *Karneval* costumes worn in different parts of Germany.
- Name some different *Karneval* greetings.
- Find out how *Karneval* is celebrated in other parts of the world.
- If you went to *Karneval*, what costume would you like to wear and why?

# KLEIDER MACHEN LEUTE



Jessie and Anna are getting ready for the school party in honour of Nick and Jessie.

## Bei Anna



## Die Party

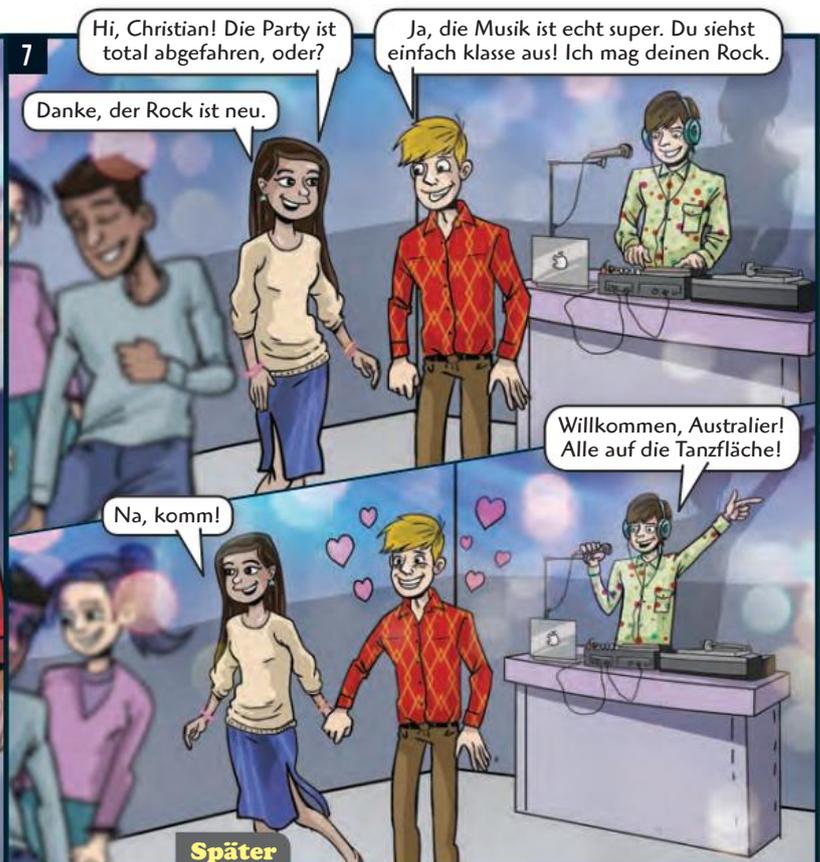


Später

6



7



Später

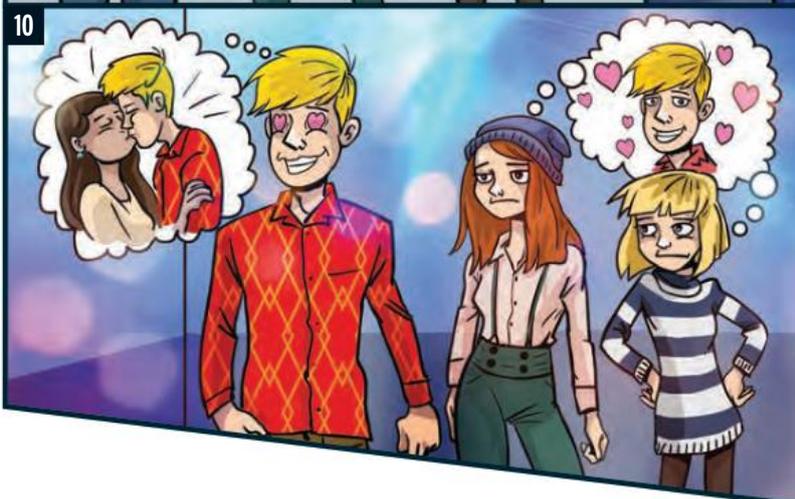
8



9



10



## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### True or false?

- 1 Jessie wants to wear a coat to the party.
- 2 Nick finds it difficult to adjust to his host family.
- 3 Christian comes from Vienna.
- 4 Sibel likes Christian.
- 5 Christian takes Sibel home.

## 1 Talking about clothing



Repeat each word you hear.

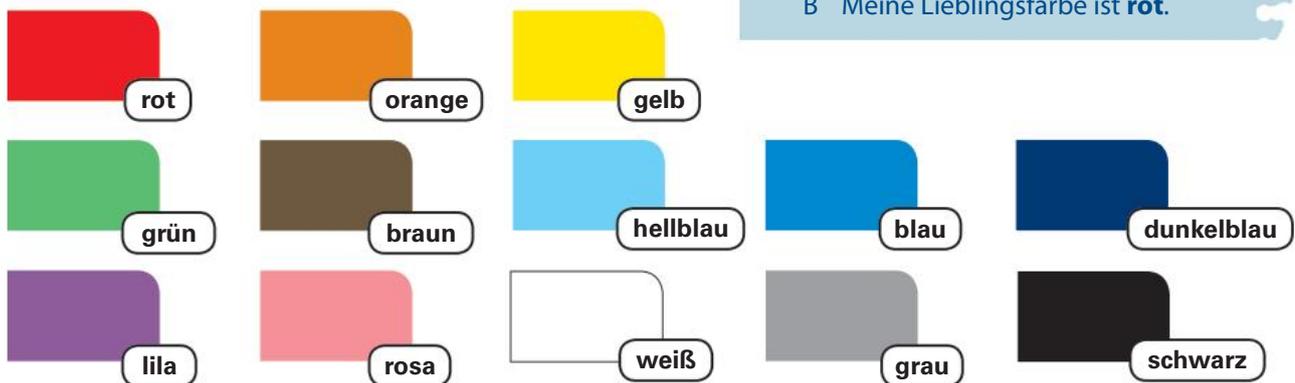


## 2 Talking about colours



Ask other students in your class about their favourite colour. Follow the example.

A Was ist deine Lieblingsfarbe?  
B Meine Lieblingsfarbe ist **rot**.



## 3 Talking about patterns



Look at the clothes in the picture above and ask a partner about patterns. Follow the example.

A Was ist **gestreift**?  
B Der **Trainingsanzug** ist gestreift.



**MACH MIT!****Pairwork**

Take turns to ask and answer questions about the clothes you see in the picture opposite. See how many clothes you can talk about in 5 minutes and how much information you can give.

Questions	Answers (examples only)
Welche Farbe hat <b>der Rock</b> ?	Der Rock ist <b>blau</b> .
Welche Farbe hat <b>die Bluse</b> ?	Die Bluse ist <b>lila</b> .
Welche Farbe hat <b>das Hemd</b> ?	Das Hemd ist <b>schwarz</b> .
Welche Farbe haben <b>die Ohrringe</b> ?	Die Ohrringe sind <b>gelb</b> .

Watch out here!



gut  
(tod)schick  
neu  
modern  
toll

schön  
cool  
klasse  
(super)geil  
warm

O.K.  
nicht schlecht

blöd  
alt  
altmodisch  
doof

hässlich  
komisch  
zu groß / klein  
zu warm

**MACH MIT!****Do you like it?**

Read the presenter's comments about the two models. Take turns reading the comments that are made by the audience. Then change a positive comment to one of the choices in the last column, a negative comment to one of the choices in the middle column, and a non-committal comment to one of the choices in the first column. Experiment with words such as *ganz*, *total* and *echt* to emphasise your feelings.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

<b>Der</b> Rock ist klasse.	Ich finde <b>den</b> Rock klasse.
<b>Das</b> Kleid ist altmodisch.	Wir finden <b>das</b> Kleid altmodisch.
<b>Die</b> Ohrringe sind zu groß.	Ich finde <b>die</b> Ohrringe zu groß.

What do you notice when you compare the sentences of the two columns? Can you find a pattern? How does this compare to English?

Now study these sentences and see if you can extend your findings.

<b>Ein</b> Rock ist klasse.	Ich finde <b>einen</b> Rock klasse.
<b>Ein</b> Kleid ist altmodisch.	Wir finden <b>ein</b> Kleid altmodisch.
<b>Die</b> Ohrringe sind zu groß.	Ich finde <b>die</b> Ohrringe zu groß.

Is there a similar pattern? Can you work out why you wouldn't say, **Eine** Ohrringe sind zu groß? What would you do in English?



## What's different about German?

### Capital letters

There is a strict rule in German about the spelling of nouns. They always begin with a capital letter, no matter where they appear in the sentence: **der Pulli**, **die Bluse**, **das Hemd**, **die Ohrringe**. You know it is a noun when you can put the word 'the' or 'a' in front of it.

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

How would you translate *Du siehst total schick aus*? If you were to look up *siehst* and *aus* on Google Translate, what would you come up with? What do you think you will need to know?



## Jessies Blogbeitrag

### Die Party



Wir tragen Winterkleidung. Das ist komisch. In Australien ist es jetzt Sommer. Mein Mantel von Anna ist nicht schick aber warm.



Links ist meine Freundin, Anna. Sie ist sehr nett. Rechts ist Julia, Annas Freundin. Sie ist todschick.



Die Musik ist total cool. Der DJ, Alex, ist der Bruder von Max. Er sieht lustig aus. Wer mag das Hemd?



Nick kommt aus Melbourne und Max kommt aus Göttingen. Max ist süß. Er trägt eine Lederjacke. Ganz modern!



Und das ist Christian. Christian kommt aus Österreich, aber er trägt keine Lederhose! Er tanzt mit Sibel. Sibels Mutter kommt aus Deutschland und ihr Vater kommt aus der Türkei.



Hier ist Anna. Sie sieht traurig aus, oder mag sie die Musik von Alex nicht? Ich finde das komisch.

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Jessie mag Annas Mantel nicht.
- 2 Julias Kleidung ist immer modern.
- 3 Das Hemd von Alex sieht blöd aus, findet Jessie.
- 4 Max kommt aus Deutschland.
- 5 Christian trägt traditionelle Kleidung.
- 6 Sibels Eltern kommen aus der Türkei.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Do you know what season it is? Can you find any proof?
- Does Jessie feel fashionable in Anna's borrowed clothes? What words would tell you this?
- What traditional clothes could Christian be wearing?
- What is Jessie's concern about Anna?

# Sprache und Kultur

*Kleider machen Leute* ('Clothes make people') – what does it mean and is it true? A similar expression was created by the ancient Greeks: 'The garment makes the man', meaning that appearances matter. A more recent definition would be 'you are what you wear'. Is it true, though, that you are what you wear? Let's explore.

Clothes can sometimes tell us a lot about the person who wears them, but the signals can be confusing if you are not familiar with the person's culture. Some items give us obvious information. If a man wears a kilt, he is probably from Scotland. If a woman wears a kimono, she is most likely from Japan. A man wearing short or knee-length leather pants is most likely from Germany, Austria or South Tyrol.

Sometimes, clothes can tell us about the attitude of a person. For example, if a young person from a wealthy background wears shabby clothes to a formal dinner, it might reflect rebellion. But beware, it is not always easy to tell where a person is from and what they are like from their clothing. Judging people based on their clothing can lead to misinterpretations, prejudice and stereotyping.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What can you tell from the clothes people wear?
- Do you think you can tell that people are German by what they wear?
- Can you think of an example where you can't tell what a person is like from their clothes?
- How can you distinguish between culture and fashion?
- How does a uniform contribute to a culture? Does it remove or enhance cultural identity?
- Look at the images. Who do you think would wear these clothes and what does it say about the people wearing them?



## So ist Deutsch!

German fashion is very cosmopolitan these days. However, it seems that you are not fully dressed in Germany unless you are wearing a scarf. Also, Birkenstock sandals are very popular in summer.

When shopping for clothes and shoes in Germany, you need to be aware that Europeans, Americans and the British use different systems for sizes. Children's clothes in Germany go by height rather than age. Children between 114 and 116 centimetres tall would fit into a size 116. A woman's Australian shoe size 5 converts to a German size 37. A man's Australian shoe size 8 converts to a German size 43.





## 1 Irregular verbs

You have already learnt how to conjugate verbs such as *gehen* and *kommen*. Those verbs never change their stem vowel in the present tense, and their endings (**e, st, t, en, t, en**) can be remembered as always being 'est-10-10'.

Here are some sentences with verbs that do not follow that familiar pattern.

**tragen** (to wear)

Ich **trage** Jeans.  
Was **trägst** du heute?  
Sie **trägt** einen Mantel.

**mögen** (to like)

Ich **mag** die Ohrringe nicht.  
Du **magst** das Kleid.

Notice the change in the stem vowel. These verbs are called **irregular** or **strong** verbs.

	<b>tragen</b> (to wear)	<b>mögen</b> (to like)
ich	trage	<b>mag</b>
du	<b>trägst</b>	<b>magst</b>
er/sie/es	<b>trägt</b>	<b>mag</b>
wir	tragen	mögen
ihr	tragt	mögt
sie/Sie	tragen	mögen

Most strong verbs change the stem vowel only in the *du* and *er/sie/es* forms, such as the verb *tragen*. Other verbs lose part of the 'est-10-10' endings, such as *mögen*.

Here is another irregular verb:

**aussehen** (to look like)

Er **sieht** nett **aus**.  
Du **siehst** total schick **aus**.

The verb *aussehen* is known as a **separable** verb. Separable verbs consist of a prefix, as well as a stem and an ending:

*aus* – *seh* – *en*

prefix – stem – ending

When conjugating a separable verb, separate the prefix from the stem and put it at the end of the sentence. You will learn more about separable verbs later.

	<b>aussehen</b> (to look)	
ich	sehe (toll) aus	I look (great)
du	<b>siehst</b> (toll) aus	you look (great)
er/sie/es	<b>sieht</b> (toll) aus	he/she/it looks (great)
wir	sehen (toll) aus	we look (great)
ihr	seht (toll) aus	you look (great)
sie	sehen (toll) aus	they look (great)

## 2 Definite and indefinite articles

The word 'the' has three forms in German: *der*, *die* and *das*. You have already learnt this in *Thema 4*. This **definite article** refers to a specific person, object or idea.

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
<b>Der</b> Mantel ist warm. <i>The coat is warm.</i>	<b>Die</b> Bluse ist schön. <i>The blouse is nice.</i>	<b>Das</b> Kleid ist cool. <i>The dress is cool.</i>	<b>Die</b> Schuhe sind neu. <i>The shoes are new.</i>

Use *ein* or *eine* (a, an) when you want to talk about a non-specific item. This is called an **indefinite article**. You cannot use *ein(e)* with a plural noun.

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum
<b>Ein</b> Mantel ist warm. <i>A coat is warm.</i>	<b>Eine</b> Bluse ist schön. <i>A blouse is beautiful.</i>	<b>Ein</b> Kleid ist cool. <i>A dress is cool.</i>

### der – den / ein – einen

<b>Der</b> Rock ist neu.	The skirt is new.
Ich mag <b>den</b> Rock.	I like the skirt.
<b>Der</b> Regenmantel ist warm.	The raincoat is warm.
Ich trage <b>den</b> Regenmantel.	I am wearing the raincoat.

<b>Ein</b> Rock ist modern.	A skirt is modern.
Ich finde <b>einen</b> Rock schick.	I find a skirt classy.
<b>Ein</b> Hut ist altmodisch.	A hat is old-fashioned.
Ich habe <b>einen</b> Hut.	I have a hat.

In German, the articles *der* and *ein* ('the' and 'a') change depending on the function of the noun they are preceding. They can either be the subject of the sentence (called **nominative**) or the direct object (called **accusative**).

	Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
Nominative (subject)	<b>der</b> Mantel	<b>die</b> Jacke	<b>das</b> Kleid	<b>die</b> Stiefel
Accusative (direct object)	<b>den</b> Mantel	<b>die</b> Jacke	<b>das</b> Kleid	<b>die</b> Stiefel

	Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum
Nominative (subject)	<b>ein</b> Mantel	<b>eine</b> Jacke	<b>ein</b> Kleid
Accusative (direct object)	<b>einen</b> Mantel	<b>eine</b> Jacke	<b>ein</b> Kleid

*Kein* (no, not a), *mein* (my) and *dein* (your) follow the same pattern for masculine nouns.

Maskulinum	
Ich trage <b>den</b> Rock.	I am wearing the skirt
Ich trage <b>einen</b> Rock.	I am wearing a skirt.
Ich trage <b>keinen</b> Rock.	I am wearing no skirt. / I am not wearing a skirt.
Ich trage <b>meinen</b> Rock.	I am wearing my skirt.
Ich trage <b>deinen</b> Rock.	I am wearing your skirt.



## Clothes and accessories

der Handschuh (e)	glove
der Hut (‘e)	hat
der Mantel (‘-)	coat
der Ohrring (e)	earring
der Pulli (s)	jumper
der Pyjama (s)	pyjamas
der Rock (‘e)	skirt
der Schal (s)	scarf
der Schuh (e)	shoe
der Stiefel (-)	boot
der Trainingsanzug (‘e)	tracksuit
der Turnschuh (e)	runner
die Bluse (n)	blouse
die (Sonnen)Brille (n)	(sun)glasses
die Hose (n)	pants, trousers
die Jacke (n)	jacket
die Mütze (n)	hat, beanie
die Schuluniform (en)	school uniform
die Socke (n)	sock
die Tasche (n)	bag, pocket
das Hemd (en)	shirt
das Kleid (er)	dress
die Klamotten	clothes (colloquial)
die Kleidung	clothes

## Colours and patterns

die Farbe (n)	colour
(hell)blau	(light) blue
(dunkel)braun	(dark) brown
gelb	yellow
grau	grey
grün	green
lila	purple
orange	orange
rosa	pink
rot	red
schwarz	black
weiß	white
das Muster (-)	pattern
bunt	colourful
geblümt	floral
gepunktet	spotted
gestreift	striped
kariert	checked

## Verbs

aussehen	to look
bringen	to bring
lieben	to love
mögen	to like
tragen	to wear

## Adjectives

altmodisch	old-fashioned
(zu) groß	(too) big, large
hässlich	ugly
klasse	first class, great
(zu) klein	(too) small, little
komisch	strange
locker-lässig	loose and casual
schön	beautiful
(tod)schick	(very) classy
toll	great

## Weather

Es ist kalt.	It is cold.
Es regnet.	It rains/is raining.
Es ist warm.	It is warm.

## Useful expressions

Bis jetzt ...	So far ...
Guck mal!	Have a look!, Look!
Möchtest du gern tanzen?	Would you like to dance?
Ich weiß nicht.	I don't know.
Ja, gerne.	Yes, gladly.
Ja, stimmt.	Yes, that's true.
Klar!	Sure!
Na, los!	Come on, let's go!
Na, und?	So what?

## Other

bestimmt	for sure
einfach klasse	simply great
fast	almost
geil	cool
heute	today
heute Abend	tonight
Mitternacht	midnight
nach Hause (bringen)	(to take) home
noch nicht	not yet
die Tanzfläche (n)	dance floor
total abgefahren	totally sick

# Guten Appetit!

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ speak and write about what you eat and drink for breakfast and lunch, and how often
- ✓ say how things taste
- ✓ order food and drink in a café or restaurant
- ✓ express preferences
- ✓ speak to people using formal and informal register.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ German food and meals
- ✓ formal and informal register
- ✓ mealtime traditions and expressions.

Meals and routines typically differ from country to country. Many Germans eat a big breakfast with bread, cheeses and cold meats, eggs and muesli. Going out for breakfast is very popular, especially among young people. Traditionally, the midday meal used to be the largest of the day – a hot meal of meat and vegetables. With school often finishing by 1 p.m., students would go home for lunch. The traditional evening meal was cold, consisting of bread with cheeses and sliced meats. Nowadays, as work and eating patterns have changed, many people eat lighter foods at lunchtime, and join their families for the main meal in the evening.

Alamy Stock Photo/Agencia Fotograficzna Caro



Shutterstock.com/Vince Adam

Shutterstock.com/Inna Zueva Nikolaeva

Was isst du zum Frühstück?

Zum Frühstück esse ich meistens Eier mit Brötchen und Aufschnitt.



Was nehmen Sie?

Ich nehme einen Kaffee und ein Stück Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte, bitte.



Alamy Stock Photo/Geoffrey Morgan

Die Zitrone ist sehr sauer!

Schmeckt's?

Mmmm, lecker!



Shutterstock.com/Presmaster

Alamy Stock Photo/philipus



Germany is famous for its delicious cakes.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are some of the expressions used around the dining table in Germany?
- How does the typical German breakfast pictured differ from the breakfast you normally eat?
- Would you like to have your main meal at lunchtime, shared with your family? How does this differ from your current routine?
- Do you recognise any of the German cakes pictured? Are these popular in Australia or New Zealand?
- Can you identify the verb used when placing an order in a restaurant or café in German? Why does it sound funny to English speakers?

## WAS ESSEN DIE DEUTSCHEN GERN?

There is a great variety of traditional foods throughout the German-speaking world. In the past, each village or small region had its own way of preparing certain dishes, which made use of local ingredients. These days, people also eat cuisines from other countries. Turkish food is popular and readily available, because there are many Turkish immigrants living in Germany. *Döner Kebab*, made with meat cooked on a spit, is especially popular. Italian, Greek and Asian cuisines are also restaurant and fast-food favourites.



Der Döner Kebab

Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance

Germany is well known for its high-quality bread and sausages. There are over 1500 different types of sausages in Germany, most with 100 per cent meat. Every German state has its own regional varieties.

### Die deutsche Wurst

Similarly, German bread comes in all shapes, sizes and colours. Some examples include *Semmeln* or *Brötchen* (bread rolls), *Brezel* (pretzels), *Vollkornbrot* (wholegrain bread) and *Pumpernickel* (dark rye bread, often referred to as 'black bread'). Interestingly, bread rolls are referred to as *Semmeln* in southern Germany and Austria, while northern Germans refer to them as *Brötchen*.

### Das deutsche Brot

Like in Australia and New Zealand, Germans are partial to fast food and quick snacks on the run. For example, Nordsee restaurants sell *Fischbrötchen*, which are very popular in Germany. Although American fast-food restaurants such as McDonald's and Burger King are very popular in larger cities, traditional German food, such as *Currywurst* and *Pommes* (potato fries) or *Schnitzel* in a bread roll, is still available on almost every corner in almost every German city or town. The stalls selling these types of snacks are called *Imbissbuden*.

**Currywurst mit Pommes. Currywurst ist eine Bratwurst mit einer Tomaten-Currysoße. Man kann Currywürste an vielen Imbissbuden kaufen.**

Going out for *Kaffee und Kuchen* is one traditional pastime that is still very popular throughout the German-speaking world. Cafés and restaurants are full of people, young and old, enjoying brunch, coffee, cakes and ice-cream, especially on weekends. Many friends and families make these gatherings a regular opportunity to enjoy food and drink together.



Die Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte



Die Sachertorte



Der Käsekuchen

Shutterstock.com/Sergey\_Bogomyak

Shutterstock.com/FotoTio

Stock.com/YekoPhotoStudio

Stock.com/LauriPatterson

Shutterstock.com/avs

Alamy Stock Photo/Steve Anderson



Der Apfelstrudel

istock.com/bonchian



Der Bienenstich

Alamy Stock Photo/StockFood GmbH



Der Berliner

Shutterstock.com/Fotosoroka

### OKTOBERFEST „BREAKER“

Oktoberfest is a folk festival held in Munich each year since 1810. Visitors to the festival can try out new types of sausages, such as the 'Breaker'. The 'Breaker' contains only 10 per cent fat, egg white, vitamins B1 and B6, caffeine and tannin. Eating it has the same effect as drinking a strong cup of coffee!



Shutterstock.com/Laura Battiato

## PROJEKTE

### PROJEKT 1 German cakes

Search online for a German recipe for *Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte* (Black Forest cherry cake), *Apfelstrudel* (apple strudel) or *Käsekuchen* (cheesecake).

- Can you pick out some of the ingredients in the German recipe and translate them or identify what they mean?
- Now try to find an English translation for the recipe you have chosen. Can you make this recipe at home with friends or family?

### PROJEKT 3 Traditional dishes

Have you ever had a traditional German meal? Use the internet to answer these questions:

- Is there a German restaurant near you?
- Find out about other traditional foods from German-speaking countries (Switzerland, Austria, Belgium, Luxembourg, Liechtenstein).
- Are there any particular foods that dominate traditional German cuisine? Why do you think this might be?

### PROJEKT 2 Sausages

Use these keywords to find some pictures online of different sausage varieties: *Wurstsorten*, *Wursttheke*, *Wurstbude*.

- Which types of sausages do you think look *lecker*?
- Which types of sausage do you think look *eklig*?
- Did you know that there is a *Currywurst* museum in Berlin? Check it out online. Can you find out what type of sausage *Currywurst* is made of?

### PROJEKT 4 Planning a German meal

Plan a German breakfast or lunch with your class. Think of the following:

- *Wann und wo macht ihr das?* (When and where will you do it?)
- *Schreibt eine Einkaufsliste.* (Write a shopping list.)
- *Macht eine Speisekarte.* (Create a menu.)

# NICK HAT EINEN BÄRENHUNGER

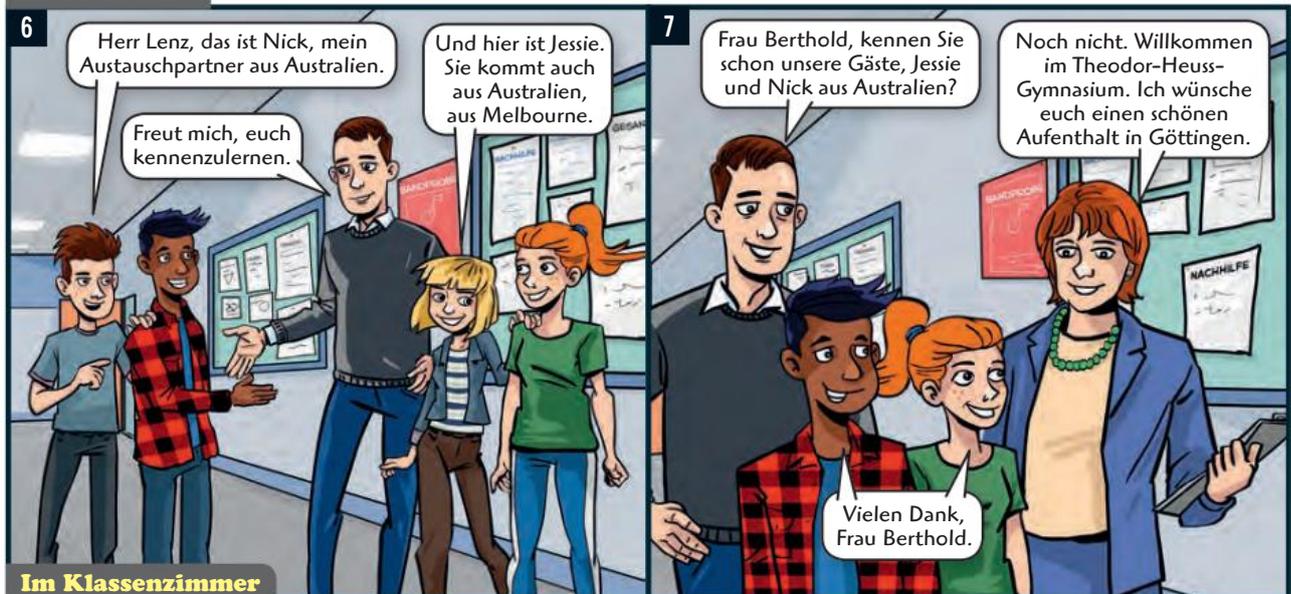


Nick and Jessie, the exchange students, have just arrived in Germany from Australia. This is their first morning at the Theodor-Heuss-Gymnasium with their exchange partners, Max and Anna.

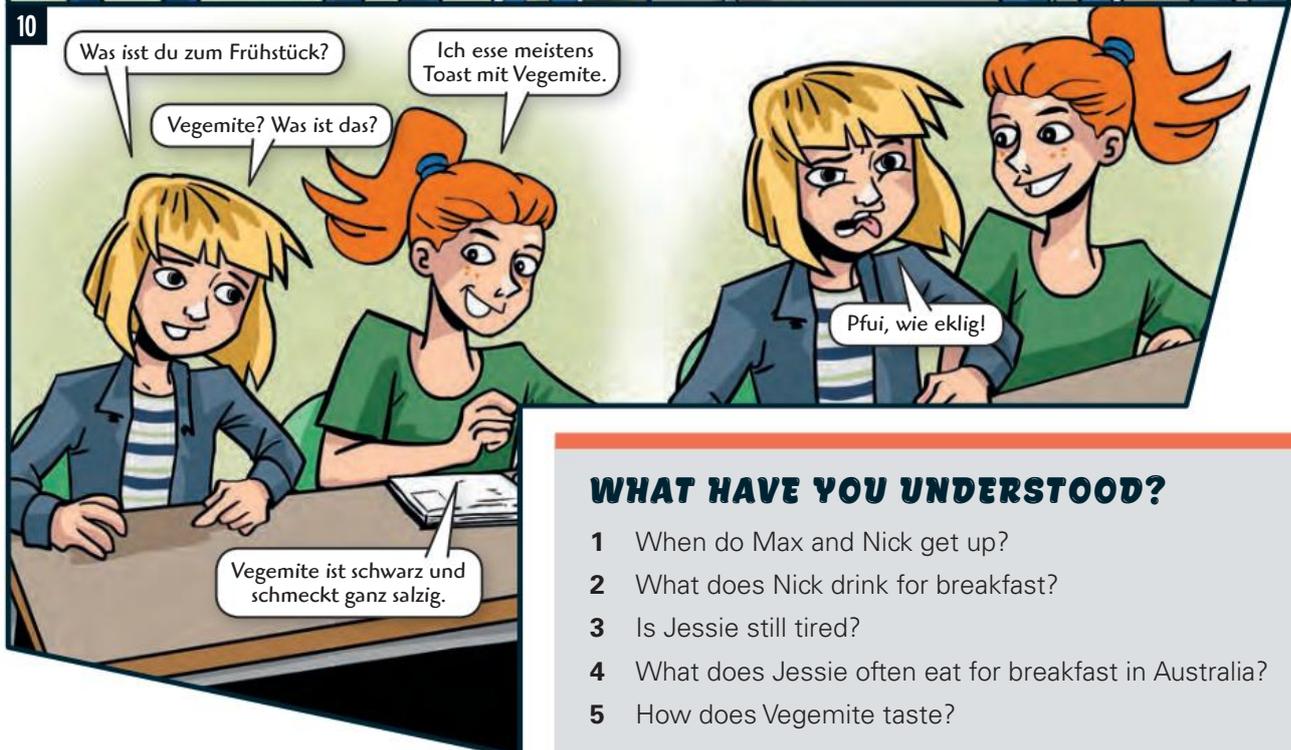
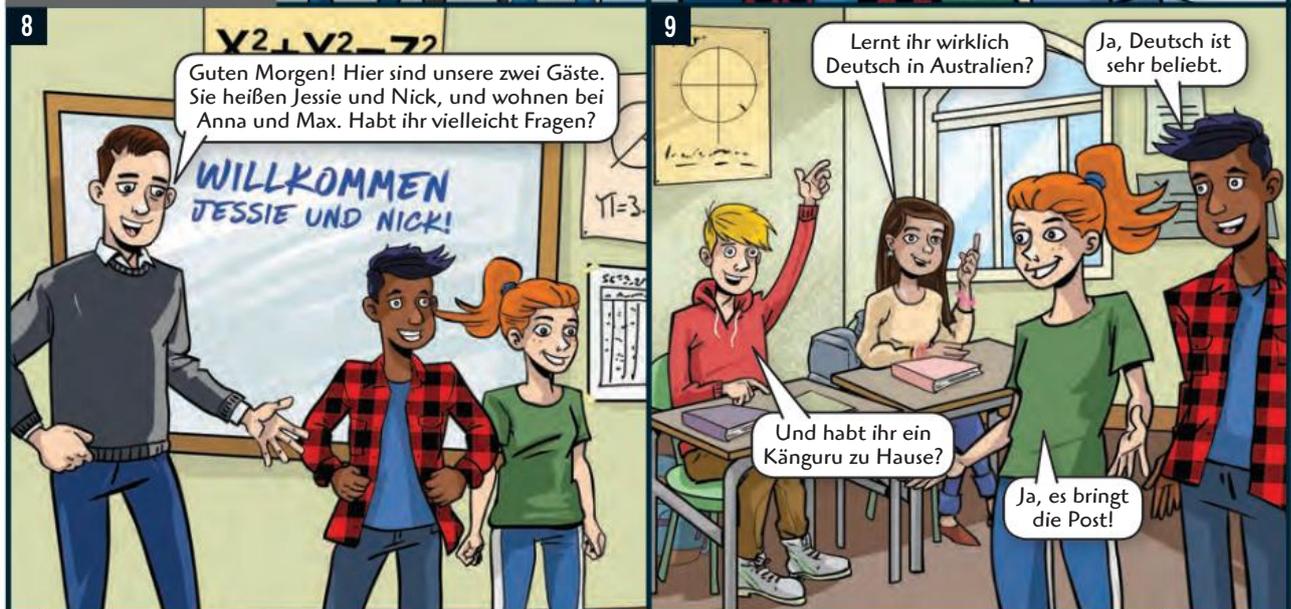
## Bei Max



## In der Schule



## Im Klassenzimmer



## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 When do Max and Nick get up?
- 2 What does Nick drink for breakfast?
- 3 Is Jessie still tired?
- 4 What does Jessie often eat for breakfast in Australia?
- 5 How does Vegemite taste?

## 1 Talking about breakfast



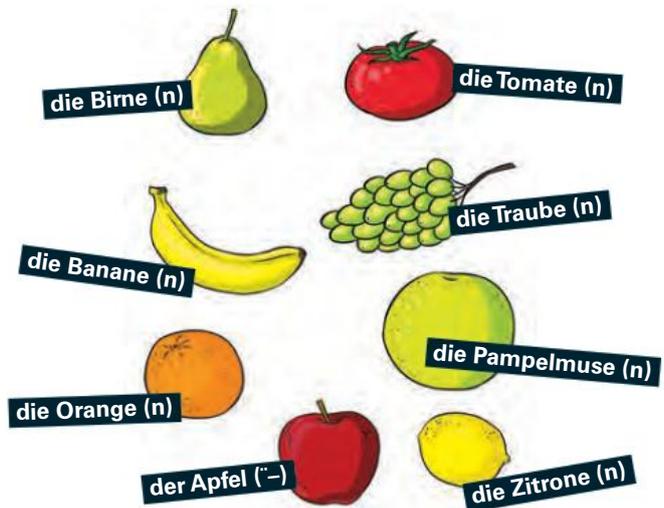
### Das Frühstück



### Die Getränke



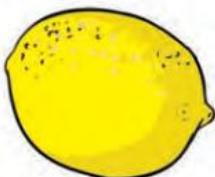
### Das Obst



## 2 Describing taste



### Wie schmeckt's?



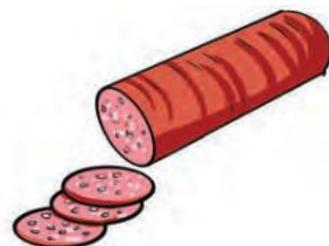
sauer



salzig



süß



scharf

### 3 Talking about lunch



#### Das Mittagessen

die Bratwurst  
mit Sauerkraut



iStock.com/dtk

das Schnitzel  
mit Kartoffelsalat



Alamy Stock Photo/IngaBROKER

die Pizza



Shutterstock.com/sbckcreations



Getty Images/Alex Orlov/Evefin

das Hähnchen mit  
Pommes und Gemüse



iStock.com/IngaNielsen

die Spaghetti mit  
Tomatensoße



Shutterstock.com/lygacis

der Hamburger

### 4 Talking about what you eat and drink at mealtimes



#### Was isst du zum Frühstück?

#### Was essen Sie zum Mittagessen?

Nick, was isst du  
zum Frühstück?



Vegemite! Ekelhaft!  
Und was trinkst du?

Ach, zum Frühstück habe  
ich **immer** Hunger! Ich esse  
**meistens** eine Scheibe Toast  
mit Vegemite. Das ist **lecker**.



Ich trinke **oft**  
Orangensaft.

Herr Lenz, was **essen**  
Sie zum Mittagessen?



Und was **trinken** Sie?

Zum Mittagessen esse ich  
**meistens** einen Hamburger.



Ich trinke **zwei Tassen Kaffee**.  
Ich habe **immer** Durst.

The adverbs *immer*, *meistens*, *oft*, *manchmal* and *nie* indicate how often you do something. Learn more about them in *Grammatik*.

## MACH MIT!

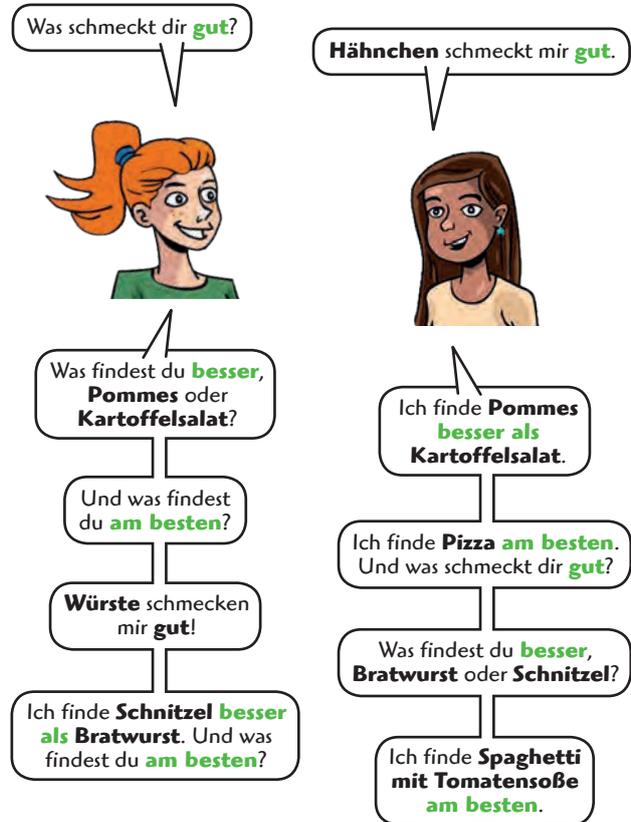
### What do you and your classmates eat and drink for breakfast and lunch?

- 1 Practise and perform both dialogues on the previous page with a partner.
- 2 Make up new dialogues with a partner, replacing the bold and coloured words with other options from the vocabulary presented in this section.
- 3 And you? What do you eat and drink for breakfast and lunch?
- 4 Play the following guessing game:
  - *Rate mal: Ich esse/trinke etwas was du nicht isst/trinkst und das beginnt mit ... B!* (Have a guess: I eat/drink something that you don't eat/drink, and it begins with ... B!)
  - *Eine Birne? Eine Banane?* (A pear? A banana?)

### Was nehmen Sie?



### Was schmeckt dir gut?



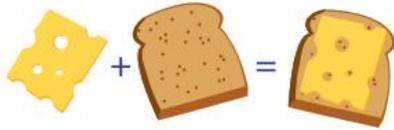
## MACH MIT!

- 1 Practise and perform both dialogues above with a partner.
- 2 Make up new dialogues with a partner, replacing the bold and coloured words with other options from the vocabulary in this section.
- 3 And you? What do you find good, better or the best? What do you not find good?

The words highlighted in **green** allow you to say what you find good, better and the best. Learn more about the comparative and superlative forms of *gut* in *Grammatik*.

## What's the rule?

A lot of nouns in German are made up of smaller nouns joined together. These are called **compound nouns**. Look at the examples of compound nouns. What do you notice about them? Which gender does each compound noun take in German?



der Käse + das Brot  
= das Käse**br**ot



die Salami + das Brötchen  
= das Salamibrötchen



die Orange + der Saft  
= der Orangensa**ft**

Can you find more compound nouns in German?

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

In German, we cannot directly translate from English to say 'I am hungry' or 'I am thirsty'. Instead, in German we use the nouns *Hunger* and *Durst* along with the verb *haben* (to have). The literal translations of *Hunger haben* and *Durst haben* are 'to have hunger' and 'to have thirst'. This is obviously very different to English!

**Hast du Hunger?** Ja, ich **habe** Hunger.  
Ja, ich **habe** einen Bärenhunger.  
Nein, ich **habe** keinen Hunger.

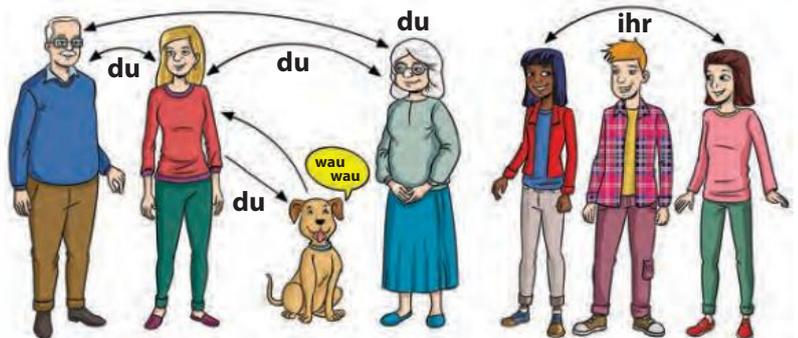
**Hast du Durst?** Ja, ich **habe** Durst.  
Nein, ich **habe** keinen Durst.

## What's different about German?

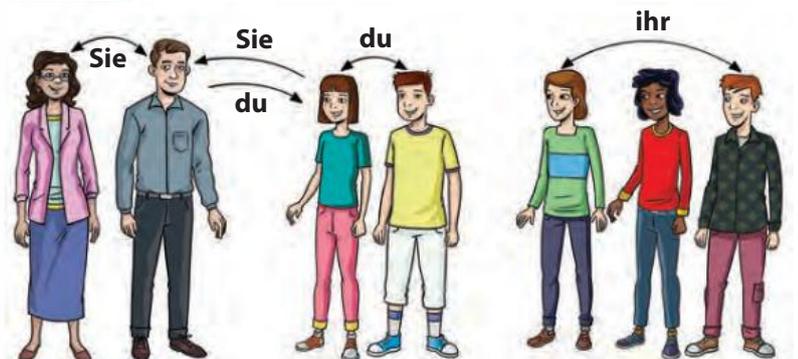


In German, there are three different ways of saying 'you'. When you are speaking to friends, family or other people you know well, you use **du** (for one person) or **ihr** (for two or more people). When you are speaking to strangers or older people and you want to be polite, you use **Sie**. When it means 'you', **Sie** is always written with a capital letter and the verb ending must agree with the corresponding verb form. See the examples below.

- Christian, kennst **du** schon unsere Gäste, Jessie und Nick aus Australien? (Christian, do **you** already know our guests, Jessie and Nick from Australia?)
- Nick, was isst **du** gern zum Frühstück? (Nick, what do **you** like to eat for breakfast?)
- Anna und Jessie, seid **ihr** müde? (Anna and Jessie, are **you** tired?)
- Und was essen **Sie** gern, Herr Lenz? (And what do **you** like to eat, Mr Lenz?)
- Frau Berthold und Herr Lenz, kennen **Sie** schon unsere Gäste, Jessie und Nick aus Australien? (Mrs Berthold and Mr Lenz, do **you** already know our guests, Jessie and Nick from Australia?)



Zu Hause



In der Schule

## Was essen sie gern?



Martina

Ich heiße Martina und ich wohne in Wien. Ich finde Wiener Schnitzel mit Pommes und Salat gut. Das ist sehr lecker. Ich finde Apfelstrudel mit Schlagobers auch super. In Österreich sagen wir „Schlagobers“. In Deutschland sagen sie „Sahne“.



Danielo

Ich heiße Danielo und ich wohne in Luzern. Das ist in der Schweiz. In der Schweiz essen wir gern Käsefondue. Wir nehmen Brotstückchen und tunken sie in geschmolzenen Käse. Super lecker!



Robin

Mein Name ist Robin und ich wohne in München. Beim Oktoberfest kaufe ich immer ein Lebkuchenherz für meine Freundin. Ich finde Currywurst mit Pommes lecker, aber ich finde Pizza besser als Currywurst. Mein Lieblingsessen ist Schnitzel mit Salat.



Lena

Ich bin Lena und wohne im Schwarzwald. Ich esse gern Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte. Wir machen die Torte aus Kirschen, Sahne, Schokolade und Teig. Ich habe eine Tante in Wien. Wir gehen oft zusammen Kaffee trinken. Dann esse ich Sachertorte. Das ist eine Art Schokoladenkuchen. Mmm ... das schmeckt!

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Lena wohnt in der Schweiz.
- 2 Robins Lieblingsessen ist Pizza.
- 3 Sachertorte ist eine Art Käsekuchen.
- 4 Martina findet Apfelstrudel mit Sahne gut.
- 5 Danielo findet Käse super.
- 6 Martina trinkt oft Kaffee.
- 7 Luzern ist in Deutschland.
- 8 Robin findet Currywurst mit Pommes lecker.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What specialties does each of the regions mentioned above have?
- How do these specialties compare (in ingredients and style) to specialty foods where you live?



Shutterstock.com/Photographie.eu

Eine Grillparty

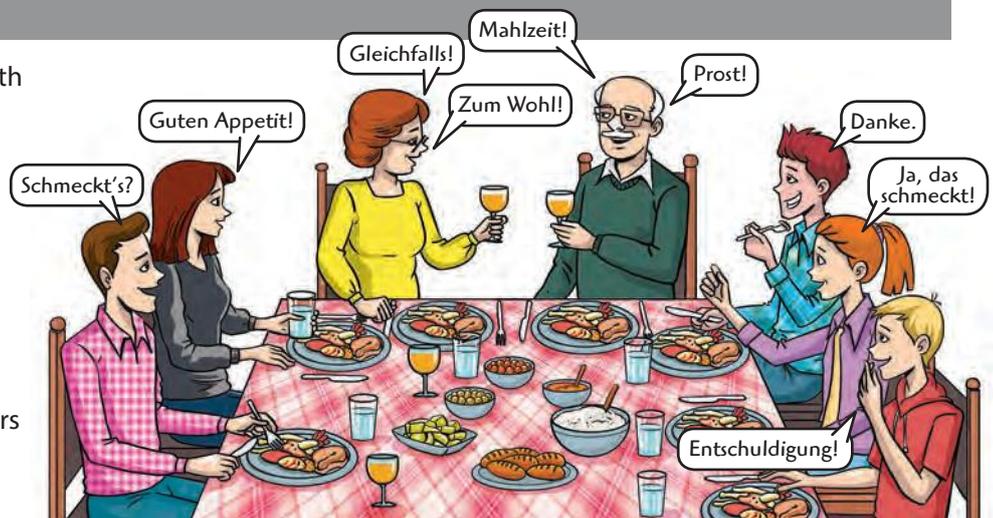
## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are the main differences in mealtime routines between Germany and Australia or New Zealand?
- Considering how mealtime routines have changed (see the explanation on the first page of this unit), do you think German mealtime traditions will change further in the future? Why and how?
- What are the differences between an Australian barbecue and a German *Grillparty*? Use your research skills to find out!
- Look at these verbs: *frühstücken*, *lunchen*, *brunchen*, *grillen*. Find out what they mean and how these words became a part of the German language.

## So ist Deutsch!

German families catch up with each other over mealtimes, discussing what has happened during the day. Shared conversation over a meal is an important part of living in a German family – everyone, old and young, is encouraged to speak.

In Germany, table manners are also very important. It is common for Germans to wait until they have wished one another a pleasant meal before anyone starts eating. Is this different to mealtimes at home with your family?



## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Here are some expressions heard frequently around the dinner table in German households. What do they mean?

## Sprachtipps



German distinguishes between **voiced** and **unvoiced** 's' sounds. The voiced 's' sound can be compared to the buzzing sound of a fly or a bee, and the unvoiced 's' sound to the hissing sound of a snake. Put your fingers on your neck as you imitate these sounds. You should feel vibrations when you produce the voiced 's' sound and no movement when you produce the unvoiced 's'.

The 's' sound at the beginning of a word or a syllable is generally voiced:

**Sauerkraut, Salat, Salz, sauer**

However, foreign words do not follow this pattern:

**Sibel, Snowboarding**

The 's' at the end of a word or a syllable is generally unvoiced:

**Reis, Pommies, Imbiss, Spaß**

## Schreibtipps

Here are some tips on when to write 's', 'ss' and 'ß':

- 'ss' is used after a short vowel  
**essen, besser, müssen**
- 's' and 'ß' are used after a long vowel  
**Soße, Spaß, Vielfraß, Glas**
- 's' and 'ß' are also used after a diphthong (such as 'ie', 'au', 'ei')  
**Reis, Haus, weiß, heißen**

Note that 'ß' can be used in both upper-case and lower-case words.



## 1 Verbs



Here are the present tense forms of the verbs *trinken*, *essen* and *nehmen*. When are *essen* and *nehmen* irregular? In this unit, you have learnt about the different ways of referring to 'you' – *du*, *ihr* and *Sie*. When conjugating verbs, the formal *Sie* verb ending is always the same as the *wir* and *sie* plural form.

	trinken (to drink)	essen (to eat)	nehmen (to take, to have)
ich	trinke	esse	nehme
du	trinkst	<b>isst</b>	<b>nimmst</b>
er/sie/es	trinkt	<b>isst</b>	<b>nimmt</b>
wir	trinken	essen	nehmen
ihr	trinkt	esst	nehmt
sie/Sie	trinken	essen	nehmen

## 2 Word order

As you learnt in *Thema 3*, German word order follows specific rules. Think of German sentences as a series of 'blocks'. The first block can be a noun with its article (*der Lehrer*), a pronoun (*ich*), or an adverb or expression telling you something about when, how or where the action takes place (for example *zum Frühstück*, *meistens*, *in der Schule*).

The second block will always be a verb when forming sentences that end with a full stop. Questions must always begin with a question word (*wann*, *was*, *wer*, *wie*, *wo*) or a verb.

To practise word order in German, copy out some sentences and cut them up into blocks. Rearrange these blocks to make new sentences, remembering the rules above.

1	2	3	4
Ich	esse	zum Frühstück	Müsli.
Zum Frühstück	esse	ich	Müsli.

1	2	3	4
Thomas	trinkt	Kakao	in der Schule.
In der Schule	trinkt	Thomas	Kakao.
Wo	trinkt	Thomas	Kakao?
Trinkt	Thomas	Kakao	in der Schule?

## 3 Adverbs

The words *immer*, *meistens*, *oft*, *manchmal* and *nie* express how often something is done. These words are called **adverbs of frequency**. In German sentences, adverbs generally come straight after the verb.

Max isst **immer** Müsli. (Max **always** eats muesli.)  
 Ihr geht **oft** einkaufen. (They **often** go shopping.)  
 Was isst du **nie**? (What do you **never** eat?)

## 4 Comparative and superlative – gut

To express our preferences, we use comparative and superlative constructions. The examples on the right show you how to use the comparative and superlative forms of the adjective *gut* to say what you find good, better and the best.

Positive form	Comparative form	Superlative form
😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
gut	besser (als)	am besten
good	better (than)	(the) best

Ich finde Salat **gut**.  
 Ich finde Hamburger **besser**.  
 Ich finde Pizza **besser als** Spaghetti.  
 Ich finde Hähnchen mit Pommes **am besten**.  
 Was findest du **gut/besser/am besten**?

You will notice that when we use the comparative and superlative forms of *gut*, we use the verb *finden* (to find). You learnt how to conjugate *finden* in *Thema 2*.



## Nouns

der Apfel (¨-)	apple
der Aufschnitt	sliced cold meat
der Bärenhunger	big appetite
der Hamburger (-)	hamburger
der Honig (-e)	honey
der Joghurt (s)	yoghurt
der Kaffee (s)	coffee
der Kakao (s)	cocoa, hot chocolate
der Kartoffelsalat (e)	potato salad
der Käse (-)	cheese
der Kuchen (-)	cake
der Saft (¨e)	juice
der Salat (e)	salad
der Schinken (-)	ham
der Tee (s)	tea
der Toast (s)/(e)	toast
der Zucker	sugar
die Banane (n)	banana
die Birne (n)	pear
die Bratwurst (¨e)	bratwurst
die Butter	butter
die Marmelade (n)	jam
die Milch	milk
die Orange (n)	orange
die Pizza (s)	pizza
die Salami (s)	salami
die Schokolade (n)	chocolate
die Spaghetti (s)	spaghetti
die Tomate (n)	tomato
die Traube (n)	grape
die Wurst (¨e)	sausage
das Abendessen (-)	dinner
das Brot (e)	bread
das Brötchen (-)	bread roll
das Ei (er)	egg
das Frühstück (e)	breakfast
das Gemüse (-)	vegetables
das Hähnchen (-)	chicken
das Mittagessen (-)	lunch
das Müsli (s)	muesli
das Obst	fruit
das Schnitzel (-)	schnitzel
das Wasser	water
die Pommes	fries, hot chips

## Verbs

bringen	to bring
Durst haben	to be thirsty
essen	to eat
finden	to find
frühstücken	to have breakfast
Hunger haben	to be hungry
nehmen	to take, to have
probieren	to try
schmecken	to taste
trinken	to drink

## Adjectives

beliebt	popular
ekelhaft (oder: eklig)	disgusting, revolting
frei	free
gut	good
besser (als)	better (than)
am besten	the best
lecker	delicious
müde	tired
salzig	salty
sauer	sour
scharf	spicy
schön	lovely
süß	sweet

## Adverbs

immer	always
manchmal	sometimes
meistens	mostly
nie	never
oft	often
schon	already

## Expressions

Das schmeckt!	It tastes good!
Entschuldigung!	Excuse me!, I'm sorry!
Gleichfalls!	Likewise!
Guten Appetit!	Enjoy your meal!
Mahlzeit!	Enjoy your meal! (formal)
Pfui!	Yuck! Ew!
Schmeckt's?	Does that taste good?
Wie schmeckt's?	How does it taste?

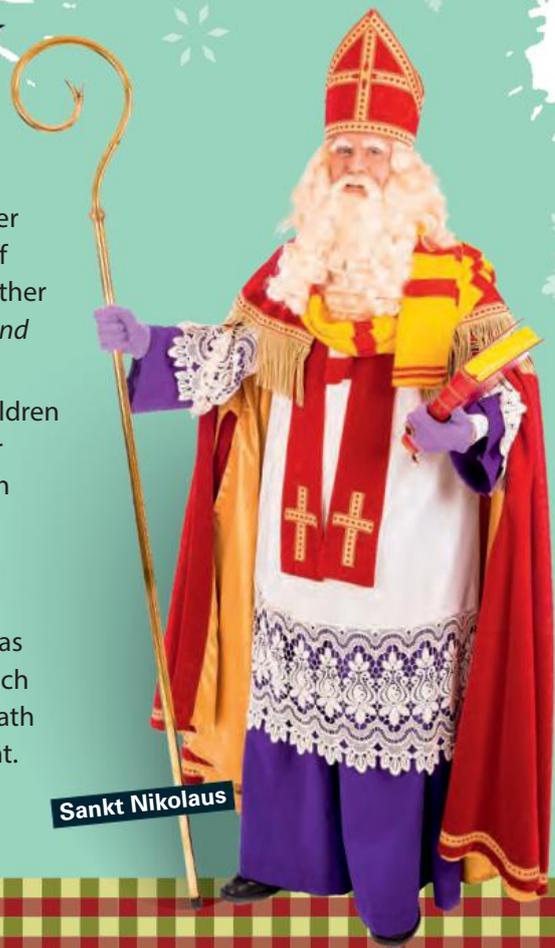


## Frohe Weihnachten!

Although the festivals may be similar, many traditions differ between Germany and Australia. This is especially true of holidays such as Christmas. You will learn about some other holidays and events on the German calendar in the *Feste und Feiertage* section at the end of the book.

In Germany and some other German-speaking countries, children leave their polished boots out on the evening of 6. Dezember for *Sankt Nikolaus*. Good children can expect to find them filled with treats (such as lollies and chocolate) in the morning. Naughty children can expect only a bundle of sticks or lumps of coal!

Children follow the countdown to Christmas on their *Adventskalender*, from 1. to 24. Dezember. The *Adventskalender* has little boxes or pockets that hold a lolly or other small treat for each day of Advent. A lot of families also have an *Adventskranz*, a wreath with four red candles, one for each of the four Sundays in Advent. Many families display lights in their front windows, rather than outside the house as is the tradition in Australia.



Sankt Nikolaus

Shutterstock.com/hans.siegers



Das Christkind

Shutterstock.com/AnjaDuda



Der Weihnachtsmann

Alamy Stock Photo/imageBROKER

On 24. Dezember, the *Weihnachtsbaum* (which is most often a real tree, rather than a plastic one) is decorated, and the wooden figure of baby Jesus is brought into the nativity scene, which is usually placed on a side table near the tree. A bell is rung and children are invited into the living room to receive the presents that the *Christkind* has placed under the *Weihnachtsbaum*. In northern Germany, the *Weihnachtsmann* knocks on the door and children are expected to sing songs or recite poems before receiving their presents. Singing Christmas carols, listening to the Christmas story and going to church are also part of the celebration of *Heilige Abend* (or *Heiligabend*) for some families.

Der 25. Dezember is *der erste Weihnachtstag* (or *der erste Feiertag*), the time for a big meal with the extended family. This meal usually consists of roast turkey or goose. Celebrations continue on 26. Dezember, *der zweite Weihnachtstag*. On *Dreikönigstag* (6. Januar), the *Weihnachtsbaum* is taken down and put outside the house on the street for collection. This is an official holiday in many German states and Austria, and some families have a special meal or religious celebration on this day.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are some of the common elements of Christmas in Australia, New Zealand and German-speaking countries?
- What are some of the most striking differences between Christmas in Australia/New Zealand and Christmas in German-speaking countries?
- Would Christmas be more fun in winter than in summer? If so, why? What do you think about the southern hemisphere trend of celebrating Christmas in July?
- What role do you think religion plays in celebrating Christmas in Germany? Is this any different in Australia and New Zealand? Fewer Germans (especially younger Germans) identify as Christian. Do you think the role of religion in celebrating Christmas in Germany will change further as time goes on?



Ein Weihnachtsbaum

Alamy Stock Photo/Art Directors & TRIP



Ein Adventskalender

iStock.com/lsannes



Ein Adventskranz

iStock.com/fermate

## PROJEKTE

Work individually, in pairs or small groups to complete *Projekt 1* or *2*. *Projekt 3* can be completed on your own.

### PROJEKT 1

Find out if there are any major Jewish, Muslim, Hindu and Buddhist holidays or festivals celebrated in German-speaking countries. Do you have similar holidays or festivals where you live?



There are many world religions, each of which has its own special traditions and celebrations.

iStock.com/Rakdee

### PROJEKT 2

Research the historical differences between *Sankt Nikolaus* and *der Weihnachtsmann*. Why might some people get them confused, or think they are the same person?

### PROJEKT 3

Create your own *Adventskalender*, naming the dates in German and using German vocabulary or images to decorate it.



## Weihnachtsmärkte

All over Germany, special *Weihnachtsmärkte* (Christmas markets) open up for people to enjoy. These markets are extremely popular. At the Christmas markets, you can buy delicious Christmas food, including *Lebkuchen* (gingerbread) and *Zuckermanteln* (sugared almonds), drinks (for example *Glühwein*, which is warm, spiced wine) and handmade Christmas ornaments, such as *Strohsterne* (straw stars), *Kerzen* (candles) and *Kugeln* (baubles).

Normally, the markets start from the beginning of Advent, 4 weeks before Christmas. They are usually open until late at night so that people can visit them after work or school.

Search online to discover more about one of Germany's largest Christmas markets.



Ein Weihnachtsmarkt

Shutterstock.com/S.Borisov



Lebkuchenherzen und Zuckermanteln

Alamy Stock Photo/Danita Delimont

## Weihnachtslieder

*Weihnachtslieder* (Christmas songs) are a big part of celebrating Christmas in German-speaking countries. Did you know that 'Stille Nacht' ('Silent Night') was originally written and sung in German?

'O Tannenbaum' is one of the most iconic and recognisable German Christmas songs. Based on a traditional German *Volkslied* (folk song) about the *Tannenbaum* (fir tree), it became associated with the Christmas season during the early 1900s. Many Germans then began to sing it as a Christmas carol.

Here are the lyrics for the first verse of the song. Sing it as a class, and see if you can sing it in rounds!

### O Tannenbaum

O Tannenbaum, o Tannenbaum,  
Wie treu sind deine Blätter!  
Du grünst nicht nur zur Sommerzeit,  
Nein, auch im Winter, wenn es schneit.  
O Tannenbaum, o Tannenbaum,  
Wie treu sind deine Blätter!



iStock.com/forchea

## Ein Rezept für Zimtsterne

Among other German Christmas traditions, *Weihnachtsgebäck* (Christmas biscuits) are very popular. *Plätzchen* (biscuits) of all different shapes and sizes are made with love, packaged up in boxes and tins, and given to friends and family members to celebrate the festive season. One popular type of Christmas biscuit is *Zimtsterne* (cinnamon stars). Below is a recipe for *Zimtsterne* – do you think you could make these at home with your family for Christmas?



# Zimtsterne

### INGREDIENTS

- 300 g finely ground almonds (almond meal)
- 1 teaspoon cinnamon
- 1 teaspoon lemon zest
- 3 egg whites
- pinch of salt
- 440 g icing sugar (+ some extra for rolling out dough)
- 2 teaspoons lemon juice



Shutterstock.com/Ildi Papp

### PREPARATION

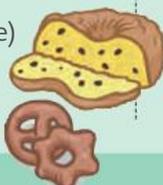
- ① Combine almond meal, cinnamon and lemon zest. Set aside.
- ② Beat egg whites and salt into soft peaks. Slowly sift in icing sugar, continuing to beat until mixture is stiff and glossy. Set aside  $\frac{1}{3}$  cup of this mixture for the glaze. Fold almond mixture into remaining meringue and mix well. Cover dough and let rest in fridge for about 1 hour.
- ③ Preheat oven to 170 degrees Celsius. Line a large baking tray with baking paper.
- ④ Sprinkle a surface with some icing sugar and roll out dough to 6 mm thickness. Cut out biscuits with a star-shaped cutter. Place biscuits on baking trays.
- ⑤ For the glaze, add lemon juice to reserved meringue and stir until smooth. Brush tops of biscuits with the glaze.
- ⑥ Bake for 20 to 25 minutes until biscuits are light brown. When done, they will still be a bit soft in the centre. Cool on wire racks. Biscuits can be stored for about 2 weeks in airtight containers.

## Weihnachtswokabeln

der Adventskalender (-)  
der Adventskranz (e)  
das Christkind  
der Engel (-)  
das Geschenk (e)  
das Herz (en)  
die Kerze (n)

die Kugel (n)  
der Lebkuchen (-)  
das Plätzchen (-)  
der Stern (e)  
der Strohstern (e)  
der Stollen (-)  
die Portion (en)

Zuckermanteln  
das Weihnachten (-)  
der Weihnachtsbaum (e)  
der Weihnachtsmann (er)  
der Weihnachtsmarkt (e)  
Sankt Nikolaus / der Nikolaus



# Was machst du heute?

In this chapter, you will learn to:

- ✓ ask for and give the date
- ✓ say when your birthday is
- ✓ ask others when their birthdays are
- ✓ arrange to meet with a friend in your free time
- ✓ talk about holidays
- ✓ describe the weather.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ favourite holiday activities in German-speaking countries
- ✓ the seasons in German-speaking countries.

All over the world, people like to get together with friends and celebrate special events. Most students look forward to school holidays and weekends. However, students in different countries have holidays at different times of year, for different celebrations and for different lengths of time.

Being in the northern hemisphere, German seasons are at opposite times of the year to ours. To accommodate a large population, the German states have rotating school holidays. This means popular tourist attractions are not overburdened with people holidaying, and their peak times last longer.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are some of the most popular ways people in German-speaking countries spend their holidays? Where do they go?
- What activities are popular and how long are some of the different holidays?
- What effect does the weather have on popular leisure activities?

iStock.com/vispassion/Photography



Die Sommerferien waren heiß und sonnig.  
Wir waren am Strand.

Shutterstock.com/wo hsiung



iStock.com/DusanManic



Es ist heute ziemlich kühl und wolkig.



Es ist kalt und es schneit. Wir fahren Ski.

Shutterstock.com/Goran Vrhovac



Das Wetter ist schlecht. Es regnet oft im Herbst.



Getty Images/Steffen Schnur

Es ist stürmisch und es gibt Gewitter. Gehen wir ins Kino?



Was machen wir heute?

iStock.com/rodin\_tvskov

Es ist windig.



Shutterstock.com/Roman Babakin

Es war kalt auf dem Weihnachtsmarkt.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are the different weather conditions described on these pages?
- Are there any weather conditions shown here that do not occur where you live?
- What descriptions, images and activities would you need to change if you were to create a page like this for Australia?
- Describe your school holidays. When are they? How long do they last? What are popular activities? Do they coincide with public holidays or festivals? What are popular holiday destinations? How do you think teenagers in Germany, Austria or Switzerland might answer those questions?

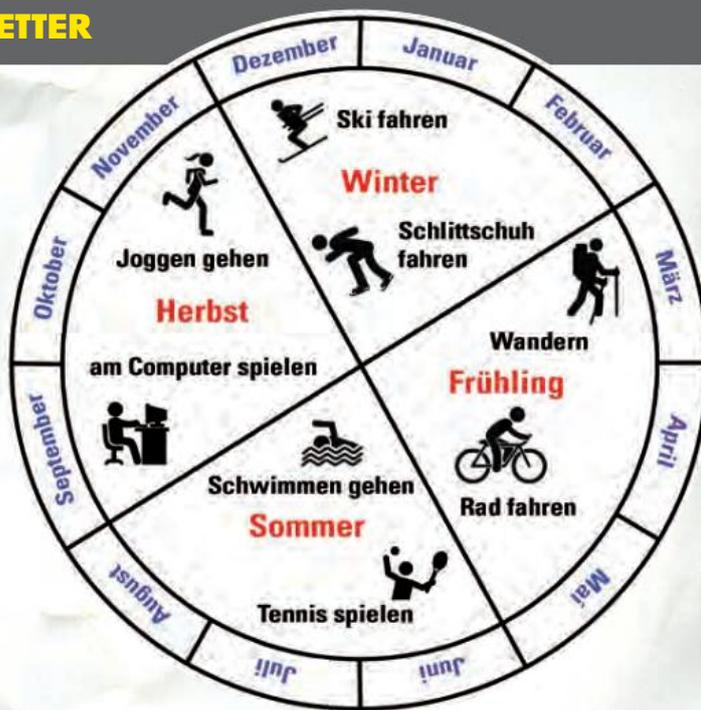
## DIE JAHRESZEITEN UND DAS WETTER

German winters are very cold, and you can expect the maximum temperature to be between 2°C and -10°C most days. The further south you go, the colder it will be. Snow is quite common from late December till February, although this is changing markedly due to climate change (Klimawandel). Many plants are bare and days are short. In January, the sun rises about 8 a.m. and sets before 5 p.m.

In March, spring brings colour and sunshine to Germany. Easter is celebrated as new plant and animal life emerges in nature.

Summer can be hot and many Germans swim in the local lakes, or head to coastal towns on the Baltic or North seas. Many Germans go hiking and there are plenty of outdoor festivals. By July the temperature might reach 30°C and it is daylight from 5.30 a.m. till 9.30 p.m.

In autumn, the leaves change colour and start to fall. Maximum temperatures are usually between 15°C and 20°C. This is the wettest season, and can be quite windy in some regions, especially in the north.



Im März, April und Mai ist es Frühling in Europa. Im Juni, Juli und August ist es Sommer. Im September, Oktober und November ist es Herbst. Im Dezember, Januar und Februar ist es Winter. Ostern ist im Frühling. Weihnachten ist im Winter. Die langen Ferien sind im Juli und August. Und bei dir?

## DAS SCHULJAHR

August	September	Oktober	November	Dezember	Januar	Februar	März	April	Mai	Juni	Juli
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7
8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11
12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13
14	14	14	14	14	14	14	9	14	14	14	14
15	15	15	15	15	15	15	10	15	15	15	15
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17
18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18
19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19
20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21
22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22
23	23	23	23	23	23	23	23	23	23	23	23
24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24
25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25
26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26
27	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	27
28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28
29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29
30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30
31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31

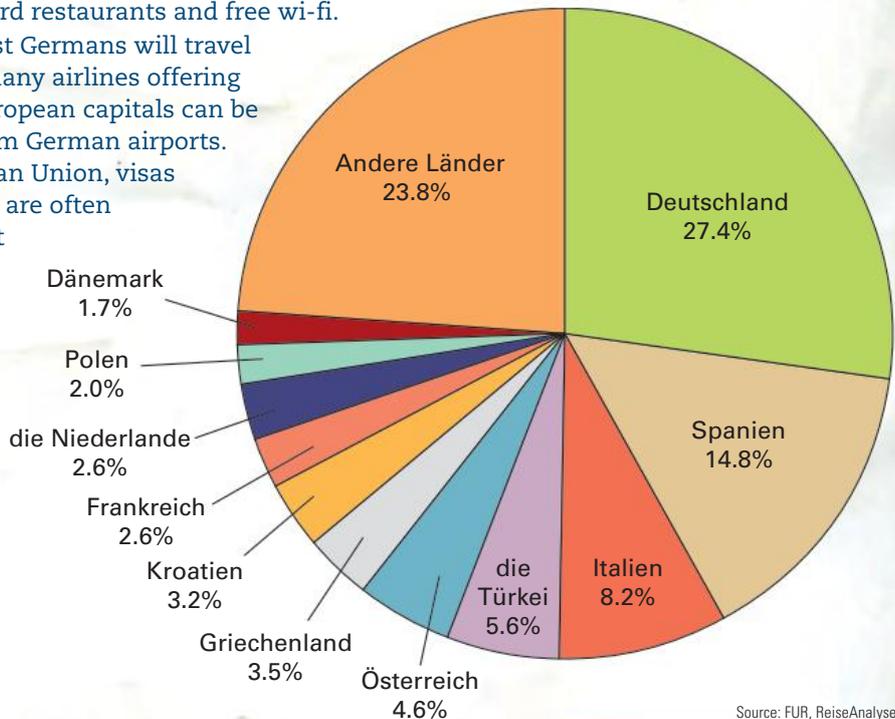
Please note that school holiday dates change every year.

German students are expected to work hard during the school year so they look forward to the 13 weeks of school holidays spread throughout the school year. The 16 states of Germany all have different start and finish dates for their holidays so that not the whole population is travelling at the same time. Parents who choose to take their child on holidays during school term can face fines unless they have been given written permission from the education department beforehand. This permission is very hard to get and you must have a very good reason. Austria and Switzerland also have a similar amount of holiday time to Germany; however, in Austria students are given a week in June for *Pfingstferien* (Whitsuntide, 7 weeks after Easter). Switzerland also has no *Herbstferien*, and the holidays in February are called *Sportferien*. Both countries have longer *Sommerferien* to make up for the missing *Herbstferien*. Southern German states often have more holidays for religious reasons because it is historically more Catholic than the north.

**URLAUB**

The German train network is extensive and many Germans travel by train between cities for long weekends or during holidays. Train travel is comfortable, quick and affordable. Intercity express trains have on-board restaurants and free wi-fi.

If leaving Germany, most Germans will travel within Europe. There are many airlines offering cheap flights, and most European capitals can be reached within 3 hours from German airports. As members of the European Union, visas are not required, and there are often express queues available at international airports.



Source: FUR, ReiseAnalyse 2017

**German holiday destinations in 2016**

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Seasons**

- How do German seasons compare to the seasons where you live?
- Research statistics about how popular some activities (e.g. skiing) are in the DACHL countries and compare this with Australia.
- How would you celebrate your birthday, Christmas, New Year's Eve and Easter differently if they were in the opposite seasons?

**PROJEKT 2 School holidays**

- Why do you think the October school holidays are listed first in Germany?
- Why do you think Switzerland calls the February holidays *Sportferien*?
- Choose a German, Swiss or Austrian region and compare their holidays for this year with yours. Which system of holidays do you prefer and why?

# WIE WAREN DIE FERIEEN?



It's the first day back at school after the Christmas holidays.

## Der 1. Schultag nach den Ferien



**Später**

**6**

**7**

Guck mal! Es regnet und es ist windig.

Ach nein! Dann fahren wir nicht Schlittschuh.

**8**

Gehen wir einkaufen?

Nein, das ist langweilig. Gehen wir ins Kino?

Ja, prima!

**9**

Wetter: Morgens kühl. Spät nachmittags stürmisch mit Gewitter. Max. 8 Grad.

**10**

Wir gehen ins Kino, nicht Schlittschuh fahren. Wir treffen uns um 15 Uhr am Kino CinemaxX.

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### True or false?

- 1 Max and Nick went to the beach on their holidays.
- 2 Julia went to France on her holidays.
- 3 It was raining in Turkey.
- 4 Skating was cancelled because of snow.
- 5 Anna likes shopping.

## 1 Saying the date and your birthday



<p>1. Januar</p> <p>2. Februar</p> <p>3. März</p> <p>4. April</p> <p>5. Mai</p> <p>6. Juni</p> <p>7. Juli</p> <p>8. August</p> <p>...</p> <p>19. September</p> <p>20. Oktober</p> <p>...</p> <p>30. November</p> <p>31. Dezember</p>	<p>Heute ist ...</p> <p>der <b>erste</b> Januar</p> <p>der <b>zweite</b> Februar</p> <p>der <b>dritte</b> März</p> <p>der <b>vierte</b> April</p> <p>der <b>fünfte</b> Mai</p> <p>der <b>sechste</b> Juni</p> <p>der <b>siebte</b> Juli</p> <p>der <b>achte</b> August</p> <p>der ...</p> <p>der <b>neunzehnte</b> September</p> <p>der <b>zwanzigste</b> Oktober</p> <p>der ...</p> <p>der <b>dreißigste</b> November</p> <p>der <b>einunddreißigste</b> Dezember</p>	<p>Mein Geburtstag ist ...</p> <p>am <b>ersten</b> Januar</p> <p>am <b>zweiten</b> Februar</p> <p>am <b>dritten</b> März</p> <p>am <b>vierten</b> April</p> <p>am <b>fünften</b> Mai</p> <p>am <b>sechsten</b> Juni</p> <p>am <b>siebten</b> Juli</p> <p>am <b>achten</b> August</p> <p>am ...</p> <p>am <b>neunzehnten</b> September</p> <p>am <b>zwanzigsten</b> Oktober</p> <p>am ...</p> <p>am <b>dreißigsten</b> November</p> <p>am <b>einunddreißigsten</b> Dezember</p>
--	--	--

### MACH MIT!

#### Swap some dates!

Practise the conversation with a friend, swapping the dates to match the ones below.

- Datum: 16.09 / Geburtstag: 04.01
- Datum: 03.10 / Geburtstag: 15.04
- Datum: 30.05 / Geburtstag: 23.10
- Datum: 21.02 / Geburtstag: 12.01

### MACH MIT!

#### When is your birthday?

Using only German to ask and answer, find out the birthdays of your classmates and stand in order from the earliest birthday to the latest over a calendar year. Be ready to say when your birthday is when the teacher checks if the class is correct.

## 2 Asking what someone's plans are and arranging to catch up



spiele Fußball / Handball / Karten / am Computer  
 fahre Rad / Skateboard / Ski / Schlittschuh  
 gehe in die Stadt / einkaufen / zu einer Party / joggen  
 / schwimmen / wandern

am Wochenende  
 am Freitag / Samstag / Sonntag  
 in den Ferien  
 heute

**MACH MIT!****What are your friends doing?**

Using the question *Was machst du am Wochenende?* and the example answer in the dialogue, ask four friends what they are doing on the weekend. Note their answers in a table in your exercise book, as shown here. Use different choices from the lists above when describing your plans.

	LAURA	TOM		
Samstag	Bike-riding			
Sonntag		Playing computer		

**MACH MIT!****Arrange a catch-up!**

Take turns to act out versions of Anja and Tilo's phone conversation with a partner. Change when (day, date, time) and what (activity) is happening. Use 24-hour time, as the Germans do.

**3 Describing your holidays**

Shutterstock.com/Monkey Business Images

in Bayern  
 in Frankreich  
 in der Türkei  
 in den Niederlanden  
 in den Bergen  
 am Strand  
 zu Hause

einen Tag  
 vier Tage  
 zehn Tage  
 eine Woche  
 drei Wochen  
 einen Monat  
 zwei Monate

einfach super  
 toll  
 leider zu kurz  
 nicht schlecht  
 besser als die Schule  
 langweilig

**MACH MIT!****Solve the puzzle**

Form a group of five people. Your teacher will give each of you one of five character cards. Use the information on the card to chat with the others in your group. As you chat, find out who:

- went to Italy
- stayed home
- was away for 3 weeks
- was away for 10 days
- thought the holiday was boring
- thought the holiday was too short.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

Wo **warst** du in den Ferien?  
Ich **war** in Bayern.  
Wo **wart** ihr Silvester?  
Wir **waren** eine Woche in Österreich.  
Wie lange **war** Tom in der Türkei?  
Wie **waren** deine Ferien?

- Is the verb conjugation similar to what occurs in English?
- Write down what you think the rules are about this verb.
- Test your rule. Look for other examples of this verb in this chapter. Do these examples fit your rule?

## Prepositions

Prepositions are words that combine with a noun to tell us where, when or how. While they can all be translated from German to English, they are often used differently in the two languages, so learners may make mistakes and use the wrong prepositions.

### LET'S TRANSLATE!

Translate the bolded parts of the following sentences.

Tanja war **in Polen**.  
Ich war **bei Anna**.  
David war **zu Hause**.  
Johannes fährt **in den Bergen** Ski.  
Ich habe **am ersten Januar** Geburtstag.  
Wir treffen uns **um zehn Uhr am Mittwoch**.  
Wir waren **am Wochenende am Strand**.

- Identify the prepositions in these sentences.
- Translate the prepositions into English. Which German prepositions have multiple English translations?
- Translate these two sentences into English:

Ich war eine Woche **in Österreich**.  
Vincent war acht Tage **in Italien**.

- What word did you need to add?

## What's different about German?

### Writing ordinal numbers

Instead of writing 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th and so on, all you need to do in German is put a full stop after the number. For example:

1. = 1st  
2. = 2nd  
3. = 3rd  
4. = 4th

### The verb *treffen*

*Treffen* (to meet) must always have an object in German. So, when translating 'We meet at 10', you need to write *Wir treffen uns um 10*. You could also say *Ich treffe dich*, which is 'I meet you'. If you are meeting at someone's house, you can just say *bei* and the name. For example:

Wir treffen uns **bei** Amelie.  
Ich war **bei** meinen Großeltern.

## Postkarten aus Deutschland

Jacinta kommt aus Neuseeland und ist ein Jahr lang Austauschschülerin in Deutschland. Sie schreibt Postkarten an ihre Deutschklasse zu Hause.

*Konstanz, den 19. März*

*Liebe Klasse,  
ich bin dieses Wochenende mit  
meiner Gastfamilie in Konstanz.  
Es ist warm und sonnig. Wir  
machen heute ein Picknick  
am Bodensee. Wir gehen auch  
wandern und fahren Rad. Es ist  
so schön hier im Frühling!*

*Eure*

*Jacinta*



iStock.com/kafrez

*Ulm, den 6. August*

*Liebe Klasse,  
morgen ist der erste Schultag  
nach den Sommerferien. Ich war  
zwei Wochen in Cuxhaven, in  
Norddeutschland. Es war sehr  
heiß und es war herrlich dort.  
Ich war oft am Strand. Nächstes  
Wochenende ist Nabada hier in  
Ulm. Wir gehen schwimmen und  
fahren Boot im Fluss.*

*Eure*

*Jacinta*



iStock.com/eyewave

Ulm, den 20. Oktober

Liebe Klasse,  
wir haben Herbstferien! Es regnet viel und es ist kühl. Die Blätter sind so bunt! Wenn die Sonne scheint, gehe ich joggen oder in die Stadt. Ich shoppe gern. Wenn es stürmisch ist, spiele ich am Computer. Manchmal gibt es Gewitter. Meine Gastschwester mag es nicht, wenn es donnert und blitzt.

Eure

Jacinta



Shutterstock.com/INTERPIXELS

Oberstdorf, den 30. Dezember

Liebe Klasse,  
frohe Weihnachten! Ich war zu Weihnachten in Ulm bei meiner Gastfamilie. Es war neblig und wolkig, aber im Haus war es warm und schön. Jetzt sind wir eine Woche in Oberstdorf und ich fahre Schlitten und lerne Skifahren. Es schneit und ist eiskalt!!! Ich mache soooooo viele Fotos! Morgen ist Silvester und ich werde die Feuerwerke sehen.

Eure

Jacinta



Shutterstock.com/Samot

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### Richtig oder falsch?

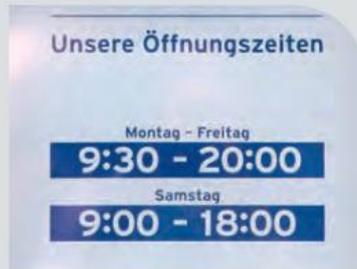
- 1 Jacinta geht im März wandern.
- 2 Es regnet viel im Herbst.
- 3 Jacinta geht im Frühling joggen.
- 4 Ihre Gastschwester mag Gewitter.
- 5 Jacintas Gastfamilie wohnt in Konstanz.
- 6 Jacinta geht gern shoppen.
- 7 Es schneit am 25. Dezember.

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Does Jacinta like Oberstdorf?
- What does the word before the date on a postcard or letter mean?
- What do you think a *Fluss* is? What makes you think that?
- Is Jacinta fit? What makes you think that?

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Can you find the time(s) shown on these images?
- What activity or event does the time indicate?
- How would you show these times on an analogue clock?
- Do the times look the same as you would expect to see for a similar situation in Australia?



Alamy Stock Photo/vario images GmbH & Co.KG



Alamy Stock Photo/Peter Jobst

Zeit	Abfahrtsort	Über	Ziel	Gleis	Platformen
11:39	Hamburg Hbf		Berlin-Spandau	9	
12:02	Bad Kleinen - Blütow - Güstrow		Szczecin Glowny	1	
12:03	L-Kücknitz - L-Travemünde		L-Travem. Strand	5	
12:06	Bad Schwesbau - Eutin - Rendsburg		Kiel Hbf	4	
12:08	Reinfeld - Bad Oldesloe		Hamburg Hbf	7	
12:09	Sülsbüchel - Rätzburg - Buxtehude		Lüneburg	6	
12:12	Timmendorferstrand - Schlarbeulz		Neustadt(H)	2	
12:28	Plohn(Holst) - Eutin - Aseeberg(Holst)		Kiel Hbf	6	
12:43	Reinfeld - Bad Oldesloe - Ahrensb.		Hamburg Hbf	7	
13:03	L-Kücknitz - L-Travemünde		L-Travem. Strand	5	
13:04	Schönberg(Holst) - Gravenstein		Bad Kleinen	1	
13:06	Bad Schwesbau - Eutin - Rendsburg		Kiel Hbf	4	

Alamy Stock Photo/Olena Buyskykh

TV-Programm	So, 14. Jan	15:00	15:30	16:00
9	WDR Ko	Sport im Westen extra		
10	Bayeris	Keine Daten verfügbar.		
11	KABEL1	Bird: Tödliche Geschwindigkeit		
12	N24	Kronzuckers Kosmos	N24 Transp	
13	ProSieb	Good Vibrations		
14	Sat.1	YOU CAN DA	YOU CAN DAN	Verliebt in Berli
15	Das Erste	Sportschau live		Sportsch

Alamy Stock Photo/imageBROKER

## So ist Deutsch!

In Europe, the 24-hour clock is commonly used for timetables, signs and public announcements. For example, 1 p.m. is *13:00 Uhr*. Most Germans use 24-hour time when arranging to meet with a friend, rather than saying *morgens* (a.m.) or *nachmittags* (p.m.). When saying at '... o'clock', you need to start with *um* and add *Uhr* after the time; for example, *um 16 Uhr* (at 4 p.m.). Midnight (12 a.m.) is the start of a new day and is referred to as *null Uhr* ('zero o'clock').

## Inviting a friend

Most German-English dictionaries will translate 'invite' as *einladen*, and it can be tempting to use this word when inviting a friend to go to the movies, shopping or bike-riding. However, when you use *einladen*, it not only means you want them to join you, but also that you will pay for them. There are a few ways to avoid this possible confusion:

1 You can use the construction 'verb + *wir*'.

**Gehen wir** am Samstag ins Kino?  
**Spielen wir** am Wochenende Volleyball?  
**Fahren wir** heute Rad?

2 You can use the verb *möchten* (would like) + *mit mir* (with me).

**Möchtest du mit mir** Ski fahren?  
**Möchtest du mit mir** joggen gehen?  
**Möchtet ihr mit mir** Fußball spielen?

3 You can say what you want to do + ask *Kommst du mit?* (Are you coming too?)

Ich spiele am Donnerstag Handball. **Kommst du mit?**  
 Ich gehe in den Ferien schwimmen. **Kommst du mit?**  
 Ich fahre nach der Schule Skateboard. **Kommt ihr mit?**



## 1 Simple past tense of *sein*

In English, we can talk about past events by using the simple past tense of 'to be' (was, were). In German, we can follow the same rule, using the simple past tense of the verb *sein*.

Christian wie **war** es in Österreich?  
(Christian, how **was** it in Austria?)

Julia, wie lange **warst** du in Paris?  
(Julia, how long **were** you in Paris?)

Wo **waren** Sie, Herr Lenz?  
(Where **were** you Mr Lenz?)

### sein (to be)

ich <b>war</b>	I was
du <b>warst</b>	you were
er/sie/es <b>war</b>	he/she/it was
wir <b>waren</b>	we were
ihr <b>wart</b>	you were
sie/Sie <b>waren</b>	they/you (polite) were

## 2 Prepositions

In both German and English, we often use prepositions to indicate **when** something is happening. The preposition used depends on the unit of time (such as 'day' and 'month').

**im** + season

**im** + month

**am** + day

**am** + date

**um** + time

Juli ist **im** Sommer in Europa.

Mein Geburtstag ist **im** April.

Ich fahre **am** Montag Rad.

Ich habe **am** 3. Juni Geburtstag.

Ich gehe **um** dreizehn Uhr einkaufen.

(July is in summer **in** Europe.)

(My birthday is **in** April.)

(I ride my bike **on** Monday.)

(My birthday is **on** 3 June.)

(I'm going shopping **at** 1 p.m.)

## 3 Ordinal numbers

When we want to say what position (or order) something is in, we need to use ordinal numbers. Most English ordinal numbers are formed by adding 'th' to the number.

Max hat am **zweiten** November Geburtstag.  
Sibel hat am **dreißigsten** November Geburtstag.

six – **sixth**

eleven – **eleventh**

twenty-seven – **twenty-seventh**

There are some exceptions to this rule.

one – **first**

two – **second**

three – **third**

five – **fifth**

eight – **eighth**

nine – **ninth**

twelve – **twelfth**

However, like in English, there are some exceptions that we need to learn.

eins – **erste**

drei – **dritte**

sieben – **siebte**

When we use *am* before an ordinal number, such as saying when our birthday is, an 'n' must be added to the end of the ordinal number.

Ich habe **am neunzehnten zwölften** Geburtstag.  
(My birthday is on 19 December / 'the nineteenth [of the] twelfth [month]'.)

In German, most ordinal numbers are created by adding 'te' to the number if it is lower than 20 and 'ste' if it is 20 or higher.

sechs – **sechste**

elf – **elfte**

siebenundzwanzig – **siebenundzwanzigste**

As you can see from the above example, dates can also be expressed using numbers only; for example, *am ersten fünften* (on the first of the fifth). In German you don't need to use the words for 'of the'.



## Periods of time

die Jahreszeit (en)	season
der Winter	winter
der Frühling	spring
der Sommer	summer
der Herbst	autumn
der Monat (en)	month
Januar	January
Februar	February
März	March
April	April
Mai	May
Juni	June
Juli	July
August	August
September	September
Oktober	October
November	November
Dezember	December
die Ferien	holidays
Silvester	New Year's Eve
Weihnachten	Christmas
Ostern	Easter

## Dates

Der Wievielte ist heute?  
What date is it today?

Heute ist der [Datum].  
Today is the [date].

Wann hast du Geburtstag?  
When is your birthday?

Mein Geburtstag ist im [Monat].  
My birthday is in [month].

Mein Geburtstag ist am [Tag].  
My birthday is on [day].

Mein Geburtstag ist am [Datum].  
My birthday is on [date].

## Weather

Wie ist das Wetter?	What is the weather like?
Es ist ...	It is ...
heiß	hot
warm	warm
kühl	cool
kalt	cold
sonnig	sunny
windig	windy
stürmisch	stormy
schön	fine (weather)
wolkig	cloudy
Es regnet.	It is raining.
Es schneit.	It is snowing.
Es donnert und blitzt.	There is thunder and lightning.
Es gibt Gewitter.	There is a thunderstorm.
Die Sonne scheint.	The sun is shining.

## Leisure activities

fahren	to ride, to travel by
Rad fahren	bike-riding
Skateboard fahren	skateboarding
Ski fahren	skiing
Schlittschuh fahren	ice-skating
gehen	to go
in die Stadt gehen	to go into the city
einkaufen gehen	to go shopping
zu einer Party gehen	to go to a party
joggen gehen	to go jogging
wandern gehen	to go hiking
schwimmen gehen	to go swimming

## Describing holidays

Wo warst du?	Where were you?
zu Hause	at home
am Strand	at the beach
in den Bergen	in the mountains
bei dir	at your place
Wie waren die Ferien?	How were the holidays?
herrlich	great
(zu) kurz	(too) short
besser als ...	better than ...
leider ...	unfortunately ...

# Mit dem Zug

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ☑ talk about travel
- ☑ say what you must, should, can, may and want to do
- ☑ use the verbs *fahren, gehen, nehmen*.

You will also learn about:

- ☑ the types of transport in German-speaking countries
- ☑ how people use public transport and why
- ☑ the history of some German transport.

Germany has many cities, some of them very large. In all cities and towns, there are well-organised public transport networks. In larger cities, there are often *Untergrundbahnen* or *U-Bahnen* (underground railways) and *Stadtschnellbahnen* or *S-Bahnen* (local railways), *Straßenbahnen* (trams) and buses. In smaller cities and villages, buses service the community.

Car-sharing services are becoming increasingly popular, because they are flexible and convenient. Many people commute by bicycle, and a few even travel on their skateboards. In big cities, it is rare for people to travel to work by car. If they do, they often live on the outskirts or in rural areas where public transport is less frequent. Students generally get to school on foot, by bike or on public transport.

Ich fahre mit der U-Bahn in die Stadt. Das ist sehr bequem.

Getty Images/altrendo images

Wir fahren mit dem Zug nach Frankreich.



Ich fahre mit meinem Skateboard überall hin.



In Berlin ist es leicht mit dem Bus zu fahren.



Die Straßenbahn fährt direkt in die Stadtmitte.



Mit dem Auto zwischen den Städten geht viel schneller auf der Autobahn.



Mit der U-Bahn fahren ist sehr praktisch!

Linie	Ziel	Abfahrt in
TXL	S+U Alexanderplatz	1 min
M48	S+U Alexanderplatz	10 min
200	Michelangelostr.	11 min
9. ***	Ab 03.08. Entspannung beim S	

Spandauer Straße / Marienkirche

Abfahrtsinformationen für die Straßenbahn

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What types of transport can you see in these pictures?
- Which of these do you have in your local area?
- How do you and your friends travel around during the week? Why?
- Does the way you travel differ on the weekends or on holidays? Why do you think that is?
- What impact do your means of transport have on your daily life?
- What similarities and differences do you see between the use of transport in Australia and in Germany?



Die Schüler nehmen jeden Tag den Bus.

## TRANSPORT IN DEUTSCHLAND

Train travel is a key mode of transport in Germany. The national rail company Deutsche Bahn (German Railways) serves tourists and is essential for thousands of commuters journeying to work every day. The geography of Europe means that it is easy to take the train to other countries, whether it be a high-speed or regional train.

IC (Intercity) and ICE (Intercity-Express) trains are fast and well equipped. They do not stop at all stations, only major towns. Regional and S-Bahn (city express) trains offer an extensive network and regular services, often stopping at each station, no matter how small.



Some of the high-speed rail lines connecting German cities with other major European cities



A high-speed ICE (Intercity-Express) train in Germany



A Regional Express train in Germany

Shutterstock.com/Gestur Gisleson

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are the main modes of travel for long distances within Australia and Germany?
- How do the modes of international travel differ between Australia and Germany?
- Is there a way of adopting the German approach to transport in Australia? If so, what might be the benefit/s?





Shutterstock.com/Yaehen\_D



Shutterstock.com/aapsky



Shutterstock.com/Yaehen\_D



iStock.com/ewg3D

**Deutsche Autos**

One of the largest and best known German industries is car manufacturing. Germany is one of the top four automotive producers in the world, alongside China, Japan and the United States.

German cars have a reputation for being reliable and well designed. Germany also has a history of mass-producing economical cars, such as the original Volkswagen Beetle (the ‘people’s car’). The Beetle was made so that everyone one could afford a car. Today, many people still own cars in Germany, but with high-quality public transport and parking being readily available in big cities, attitudes to car ownership have changed.

The Trabant or Trabi has a special place in the hearts of many Germans. It was produced in East Germany between the 1950s and 1980s and achieved cult status with collectors. It was called the ‘cardboard car’, but in reality it had a hard plastic body, mounted on a one-piece steel chassis.



**Der VW Käfer**

Shutterstock.com/matxfoto



**Der Trabant**

iStock.com/olilo

8.2

Research one of the following and present your findings as a poster or digital presentation.

**PROJEKT 1 Planning a weekend trip**

Choose a city in Germany to start a trip from. Choose another German-speaking country to spend a weekend in. Plan your trip, including attractions you will visit, public transport options, travel times and breaks. Complete a detailed itinerary.

**PROJEKT 3 Researching a German car brand**

Choose a famous German car brand and research its history. Why is it famous? Do many people own this make of car – in Germany and in your country?

**PROJEKT 2 Travelling the roads in Germany**

Research roads and highways in Germany. Find out about the *Autobahn* network. What other types of roads are there?

**PROJEKT 4 A look at the German car industry**

Research the car industry in Germany today. Are German cars as popular as they once were? What problems has the industry had?

**PROJEKTE**

# EINEN AUSFLUG NACH HANNOVER



The class is going on an excursion to Hannover.

## Am Montag im Klassenzimmer



## Am Freitag am Göttinger Bahnhof





### Im Luftfahrtmuseum



### In Göttingen, am Freitagabend

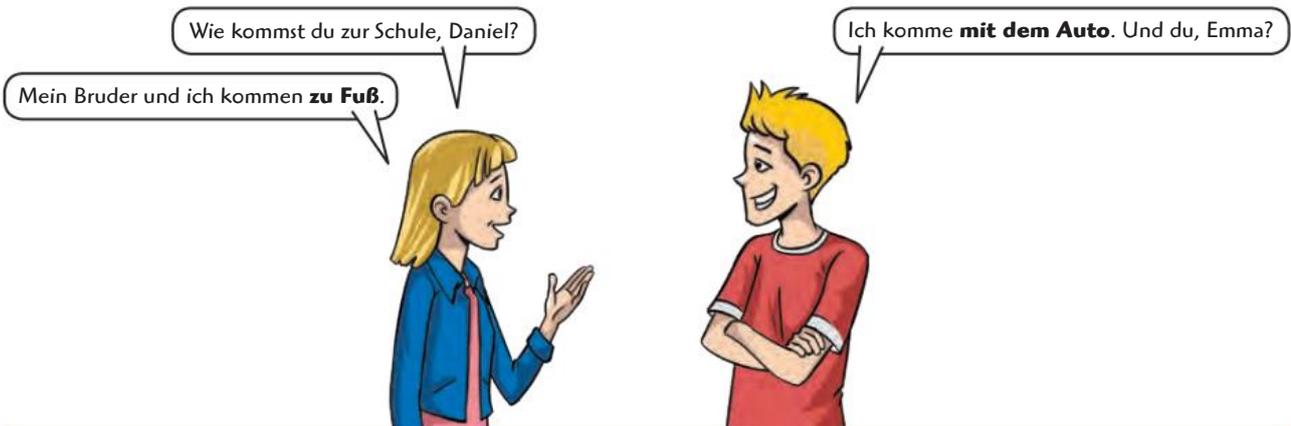


## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### True or false?

- 1 The class is going on an excursion on Thursday.
- 2 The group is travelling between cities on the train.
- 3 They are leaving Göttingen at 7.30 a.m.
- 4 Anna and Jessie want to go shopping after the museum visit.
- 5 Christian wants to shop for his mother's birthday present.
- 6 The group has time to eat before catching the train home.

## 1 Wie kommst du zur Schule?



### MACH MIT!

#### Group work

Using the dialogue as a model, ask four of your classmates how they get to school. Record their names and answers in a table like the one below.

	Daniel	Emma			
zu Fuß		✓			
mit dem Bus					
mit dem Auto	✓				
mit der Straßenbahn					
mit der U-Bahn					
mit dem Zug					
mit dem Fahrrad					

### MACH MIT!

#### Pairwork

Read the conversation below and invent new answers by replacing the words in bold with other suggestions from the box.

- Sag mal, was darf ich in Göttingen machen?
- Du darfst nicht **einkaufen gehen**. Aber du darfst **essen**.

Getty Images/Vai Thoenner



Cola / Wasser / Bier / Wein /  
Orangensaft trinken

ins Kunstmuseum / ins Kino /  
ins Einkaufszentrum gehen

Fotos / eine Pause machen

Shutterstock.com/Dean Drobot



**MACH MIT!****Pairwork**

Read the dialogue below and invent new dialogues by replacing the words in bold with suggestions from the box.

- Karl, kannst du **Gitarre spielen**?  
– Nein, aber ich kann gut **Geige spielen**.

Tennis / Hockey / Fußball / Handball / ein  
Musikinstrument spielen

Französisch / Italienisch / Türkisch sprechen

Ski / Schlittschuh fahren

Motorrad / Skateboard fahren



iStock.com/pecaphoto77

**2 Bei Susanne**

Also, tschüs, Mama. Ich gehe zu Anna. Wir sollen zusammen die Einladungen für ihre Geburtstagsparty vorbereiten.

Ja, Mathe und Englisch. Aber, wir wollen alles nach dem Abendessen machen.

Aber Mama, ich will nicht.

Darf sie? Ich rufe sie sofort an!

Susanne, warte mal! Du und Anna, aber ihr müsst zuerst eure Hausaufgaben machen!

Das ist viel zu spät. Du musst jetzt deine Hausaufgaben machen!

Das ist ja schade, aber Hausaufgaben sind wichtiger. Vielleicht kann Anna zu uns kommen? Aber ihr müsst zuerst eure Hausaufgaben machen.

**MACH MIT!****Pairwork**

Practise this dialogue with a partner, changing the roles of mother and daughter as necessary. Then create new dialogues.

## What's different about German?

Read sentences A and B in each box and discuss their meanings. What differences do you notice between the construction of the sentences in German and English? Hint: look at the word order.

### can / may

- A** Susanne darf nicht zu Anna gehen. (Susanne may not go to Anna's.)
- B** Susanne kann Rad fahren, aber sie kann nicht zu Anna gehen. Ihr Fahrrad hat einen Platten. (Susanne can ride a bike, but she cannot go to Anna's. Her bike has a flat tyre.)

### want / will (future action)

- A** Susanne will zu Anna gehen. (Susanne wants to go to Anna's.)
- B** Susanne geht morgen zu Anna. (Susanne is going to Anna's tomorrow.)

### should / is supposed to / must

- A** Ich soll zu Susanne gehen. (I should/am supposed to go to Susanne's.)
- B** Ich muss meine Hausaufgaben machen. (I must / have to do my homework.)

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Translate the following sentences into English. What do you notice about the word order between the two languages?

Er bleibt zu Hause. | Er **muss** zu Hause **bleiben**.  
Ich spiele Gitarre. | Ich **kann** Gitarre **spielen**.

## What's the rule?

Read the nouns and phrases below and discuss the rule(s) with a partner.



der Zug – mit dem Zug (the train – by train)

Shutterstock.com/Tobias Arhelger



die Fähre – mit der Fähre (the ferry – by ferry)

Alamy Stock Photo/imagobROKER



das Fahrrad – mit dem Fahrrad (the bike – by bike)

iStock.com/JZR

What changes are made to the definite article when adding *mit* (with) to make the phrase 'travel with or by (e.g. bus, train, car)'?

## Eine E-Mail von Jessie

**Von:** jessie98@gmail.com

**An:** fam\_NMcD@gmail.com

Göttingen, den 15. März

Liebe Mama und Papa,

danke für eure Mails.

Die Schule ist richtig toll hier und ich habe viele neue Freunde. Mein Klassenlehrer heißt Herr Lenz. Er ist streng aber fair! Wir müssen nach jeder Stunde unsere Mathehausaufgaben machen. Jeder soll sich in der Stunde konzentrieren und keiner darf das Handy ins Klassenzimmer bringen. Herr Lenz kann gut Englisch und hilft mir mit der Mathearbeit. Frau Berthold ist nicht so streng. In ihren Stunden darf man Musik hören.

Am Freitag macht unsere Klasse einen Ausflug zum Luftfahrtmuseum in Hannover. Ich bin sehr froh, denn wir fahren mit dem ICE und die Fahrt dauert nur 37 Minuten. Wir müssen alle sehr früh aufstehen und sollen etwas Geld mitbringen. Hoffentlich können wir Brezeln zum Frühstück kaufen. Anna und ich wollen nach Hannover fahren, aber wir gehen lieber ins Kunstmuseum. Leider können wir nicht dorthin gehen, denn wir müssen zusammenbleiben. Wir dürfen auch nicht shoppen gehen. Die Gruppe hat keine Zeit.

Also, schon gut! Wir sind am Freitag nicht in der Schule. Das finde ich wunderbar.

Viele liebe Grüße,

Jessie



senden



### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Jessie mag Herr Lenz.
- 2 Jeder darf Musik in der Mathestunde hören.
- 3 Jessie und Anna wollen kein Museum besuchen.
- 4 Jessie muss am Freitag früh aufstehen.
- 5 Die Schüler sollen kein Geld mitbringen.
- 6 Jessie will am Freitag in die Schule gehen.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are the rules about homework at your school?
- When are you allowed to use devices such as mobile phones, tablets and laptops?
- What happens when you go on an excursion? Do you take public transport?

## Transport auf Deutsch



### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Discuss these questions with a partner.

- How do Australians and New Zealanders travel between cities?
- What influences our transport choices? Are the influences the same in German-speaking countries? Why do you think this is?
- If faced with a journey of the same distance, would we generally choose the same mode of transport? What does your answer tell you about transport modes in different countries?

## So ist Deutsch!

German vocabulary for modes of transport has much in common with English. Look at the following list.

der Wagen  
der Bus  
das Auto  
die Fähre  
das Schiff  
das Boot  
zu Fuß

### LET'S TRANSLATE!

- What do these words mean?
- Was it easy to work out their meaning? Why?

Study the sentences below.

Ich **gehe** zur Schule.

(I **go** to school.)

Wir **fahren** mit dem Bus zur Schule.

(We **go** to school by bus.)

Sie **fahren** mit dem Zug in die Stadt.

(They **go** to the city by train.)

Wie **fährst** du nach Paris? Fliegst du?

(How are you **going/getting** to Paris? Are you flying?)

The English verb 'to go' can be used for different types of movement or travel to different places. It has three common German translations: *gehen* (to go, to walk), *fahren* (to drive, including bikes) and *fliegen* (to fly). In German, you need to specify how you get to a destination. In other words, you let others know whether you walk; go by car, bike or public transport; or go by plane.



## Short and long vowels



Note the difference between long and short vowels:

**u** **mu**ss, **Ku**ss (short vowel *before* a double consonant)  
**du**, **gu**t (long vowel *before or after* a single consonant)

**o** **ko**mmen, **do**ch, **no**ch (short vowel)  
**mo**geln, **so**, **gro**ß (long vowel)

**ss** **h**ässlich, **bi**sschen (after short vowel)

**ü** **mü**ssen, **dü**rfen (short vowel)  
**sü**ß, **fü**r (long vowel)

**ö** **kö**nnen, **Vö**lkerball (short vowel)  
**Flö**te, **hö**ren, **schö**n (long vowel)

The letter *ß* is used after a long vowel:

Fu<sup>u</sup>ßball, hei<sup>ei</sup>ßen

These all make the same sound:

**eu** **neu**, **Deutschland**, **Euro**

**äu** **enttäuscht**, **Mäuse**

**oi** **toi, toi, toi**

Shutterstock.com/KMW Photography



## Schreibtipps

*Man*, meaning 'people in general', is a word that is used quite often in German. The nearest English equivalent is 'one', as in the sentence, 'One should always wash one's hands before eating'. However, in English, we only use 'one' in formal expressions, not in everyday language. Instead, we often use 'you' or 'they' to mean 'people in general'. Here are some examples of how German speakers use *man*.

**Man** muss Obst essen. (You must eat fruit.)

**Man** kann sehr viel lernen. (You can learn a lot.)

In Deutschland darf **man** mit 16 Bier trinken. (In Germany, people are allowed to drink beer at 16.)

Remember, do not confuse **man** with **Mann**. While the first means anyone or people in general, the second one specifically refers to a male individual, a man!



## 1 Modal verbs – können, dürfen, müssen, sollen, wollen

Modal verbs are a group of auxiliary or 'helping' verbs. They are usually accompanied by another verb in the infinitive. If they are not, it is because the meaning is clear from the context and the action verb is implied. The modal verb adds meaning to the main verb by expressing ability, permission, necessity or desire.

	können (can, to be able to)	dürfen (may, to be allowed to)	müssen (must, to have to)	sollen (should, supposed to)	wollen (want)
ich	<b>kann</b>	<b>darf</b>	<b>muss</b>	<b>soll</b>	<b>will</b>
du	<b>kannst</b>	<b>darfst</b>	<b>musst</b>	<b>sollst</b>	<b>willst</b>
er/sie/es	<b>kann</b>	<b>darf</b>	<b>muss</b>	<b>soll</b>	<b>will</b>
wir	können	dürfen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr	<b>könnt</b>	<b>dürft</b>	<b>müsst</b>	<b>sollt</b>	<b>wollt</b>
Sie/sie	können	dürfen	müssen	sollen	wollen

## 2 Verbs – fahren, nehmen, helfen



These three important verbs have spelling changes in the second and third person singular. They are examples of *starke Verben* (strong verbs).

	fahren (to travel, to go)	nehmen (to take)	helfen (to help)
ich	fahre	nehme	helfe
du	<b>fährst</b>	<b>nimmst</b>	<b>hilfst</b>
er/sie/es	<b>fährt</b>	<b>nimmt</b>	<b>hilft</b>
wir	fahren	nehmen	helfen
ihr	fahrt	nehmt	hilft
Sie/sie	fahren	nehmen	helfen

Shutterstock.com/bvvalet





## Transport

der Bahnhof (‘e)	train station
der Bus (se)	bus
der ICE (-)	Intercity-Express train
der Platten (-)	flat tyre
der Wagen (-)	car
der Zug (‘e)	train
die Autobahn (en)	freeway, motorway
die Fähre (n)	ferry
die Luftfahrt (en)	air travel, aviation
die S-Bahn (Schnellbahn) (en)	local train line
die Straßenbahn (en)	tram
die U-Bahn (Untergrundbahn) (en)	underground train
das Auto (s)	car
das Boot (e)	boat
das Fahrrad (‘er)	bicycle
das Flugzeug (e)	aeroplane
das Motorrad (‘er)	motorbike
das Schiff (e)	ship
das Skateboard (s)	skateboard

## Other nouns

der Ausflug (‘e)	excursion
die Stadt (‘e)	city
die Stadtmitte (n)	city centre
das Einkaufszentrum (-zentren)	shopping centre
das Kino (s)	cinema
das Kunstmuseum (s)	art gallery
das Museum (s)	museum

## Adjectives

enttäuscht	disappointed
leicht	easy
schnell	fast

## Adverbs

bald	soon
direkt	directly
leider	unfortunately
überall	overall
zusammen	together

## Prepositions

für	for
in	in, into
mit	with, by
nach	to (a country or city), after (time)

## Expressions

richtig toll	really great
zum ersten Mal	for the first time

## Modal verbs

dürfen	may, to be allowed to
können	can, to be physically able to
müssen	must, to have to
sollen	should, ought/ supposed to
wollen	to want (to)

## Verbs

aufstehen	to get up
besuchen	to visit
fahren	to travel, to go
fliegen	to fly
gehen	to go
helfen	to help
kommen	to come
sich konzentrieren (ich konzentriere mich)	to concentrate (reflexive verb)
mitbringen	to bring (with)
mogeln	to cheat
nehmen	to take
tragen	to wear, to carry
treffen	to meet

# Wir lieben Tiere!

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ✓ describe a variety of pets
- ✓ talk about whether you or others have a pet
- ✓ talk about what different pets eat
- ✓ say which pets you like or dislike and how much.

You will also learn about:

- ✓ the types of pets that are popular in German-speaking countries
- ✓ pet hotels
- ✓ zoos in German-speaking countries.

Pets are an important part of the family in the German-speaking world. In Germany alone, you can find at least one dog for every eight households, and almost half of all households in Germany have at least one pet. Cats are by far the most popular and most common pet. A total of 13.4 million cats currently reside in German households, followed by 8.6 million dogs. Small rodents are also quite common, for example rabbits, hamsters, guinea pigs and even mice and rats.

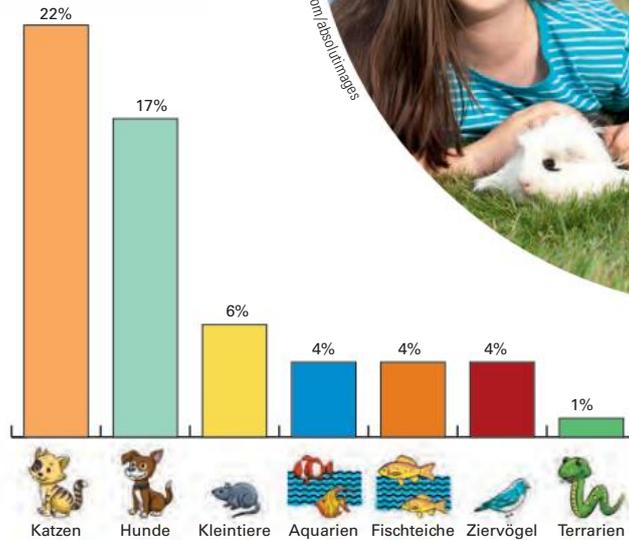
Ich liebe Rex!

Wir lieben unsere Tiere! Wir haben eine Gans, einen Hund, ein Kaninchen und ein Schaf.

Getty Images/Matteo Colombo

Getty Images/Birgid Allig

Ich mag Katzen am liebsten. Das sind Ming, Bo und Rosi, meine Kätzchen.



Das ist mein Meerschweinchen, Rambo. Ich finde Meerschweinchen niedlich!



Katzen sind die beliebtesten Haustiere.

Some people, however, like more exotic animals such as snakes, spiders or other reptiles.



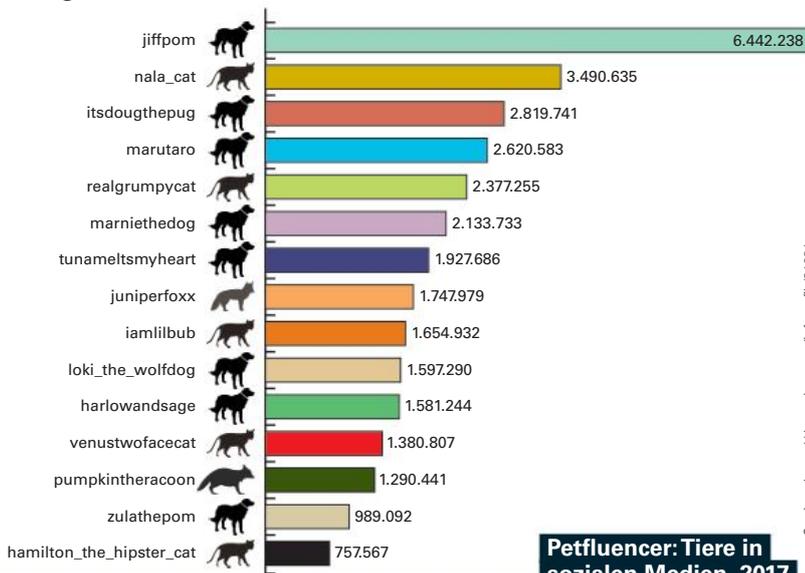
Das ist Susi! Möchtest du sie streicheln?

You can even find something as different as a chinchilla in some families. Chinchillas look like a mix between a guinea pig and a squirrel, and originally came from South America.



Bin ich nicht süß?

Some owners love their pets so much they even create accounts for them on social media. Many of these so-called 'petfluencers' have a large number of followers.



Petfluencer: Tiere in sozialen Medien, 2017

Source: Statista, <https://de.statista.com/infografik/9168/katzen-sind-die-beliebtesten-haustiere-der-deutschen/>

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What are the different animals people keep in Germany? Why do you think dogs and cats are more common than snakes?
- What are some of the most common pets where you live?
- Why do you think people in German-speaking countries largely keep small pets? Is that the case in your country? Why or why not?
- Do you have a pet? If so, what and why did you choose that particular animal?
- Why do you think people show their pets on social media?
- What can you tell about someone from the pet they own?

# { INFOS }

## HAUSTIERNAMEN

Pets in German-speaking countries do not always have German names. Often, names are taken from famous people or animals in movies, such as Babe, Calvin, Beauty, Beethoven, Merlin and Bolt. German pet names often end in *-chen* such as Paulchen, Carlchen and Mäuschen. Likewise, pet owners are referred to as *Herrchen* and *Frauchen*.



## TIERHOTELS

You can find *Tierhotels* (pet hotels) all over German-speaking countries. When people go on holidays, they often leave their pets at one of them. But these hotels can be expensive. To find one nearby, just search online for *Tierhotel*.

Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance



Ein Tierhotel



© Tierhotel 5 Stern, <https://tierhotel5stern.ch/>

## TIERGARTEN

The world's oldest zoo is in Vienna. It is called *Tiergarten Schönbrunn* and was built in 1752. The Austrian emperor at the time ordered its construction as part of the Schönbrunn Palace, because he wanted to keep exotic animals for his entertainment.

Between 2 and 2.5 million people now visit this zoo every year and it contributes significantly to the European breeding program of many species.

Shutterstock.com/Nataliya Nazarova



Tiergarten Schönbrunn



Schloss Schönbrunn

Shutterstock.com/empercorosar

## WOLPERTINGER

Ein Wolpertinger



German-speaking countries have a long history of being home to many mythical creatures. One of them is the so-called 'Wolpertinger'.

The Wolpertinger (*Wolpertingus bajuwarensis*) lives in the Bavarian forest. It is sometimes also called *Hirschbockbirkfuchsauergams*, and has antlers like a deer, wings like a bird, the body of a hare, the tail of a squirrel, hoofs, fangs and claws. It can only be seen at night. The Wolpertinger eats little mice and insects, but when it's hungry, it is even said to eat humans.

## DIE BREMER STADTMUSIKANTEN

The 'Town Musicians of Bremen' is a popular fairy tale by the Brothers Grimm. In the story, a group of animals (a donkey, a dog, a cat and a rooster), past their years of usefulness and treated badly by their owners, decide to leave their homes and travel to the German town of Bremen to become musicians there. On the way, they find four thieves in a cottage. They stand on each other's backs and make the loudest noises possible, all braying, barking, meowing and crowing at the same time. They scare the thieves away and settle down in the cottage.

Later the same night, the thieves return. One is sent to the cottage to find out what made the awful noises. He sees the cat's eyes glowing in the darkness and the thief thinks he is seeing the coals of the fire. He reaches over to light his candle, but the cat scratches his face with her claws, the dog bites his leg, the donkey kicks him with his hoofs, while the rooster chases him out the door with his crows. The thief returns to his companions and tells them that he was chased by a witch, an ogre, a giant and, worst of all, the judge who screamed from the rooftop. The thieves decide to leave the cottage, where the animals live happily ever after.



Die Bremer Stadtmusikanten

Shutterstock.com/Marc Venema

## PROJEKTE

Choose one of the *Projekte* and create a digital presentation or poster based on the given research questions.

### PROJEKT 1 Pet hotels

- What are pet hotels like?
- What types of pets are preferred? Is there a difference between the countries?
- What is the cost?
- What services do pet hotels offer?

### PROJEKT 3 Wolpertinger

- Where does the Wolpertinger live?
- What does it look like?
- What does it eat?
- What can you find out about its origins?
- Can you find other mythical creatures from German-speaking regions?
- Can you find mythical creatures in your region? What are their origins?
- Can you think of reasons why people invented mythical creatures?

### PROJEKT 2 Zoos

- What other zoos are very old besides Tiergarten Schönbrunn?
- Do you have a zoo in your area? If so, what can you find out about its history? When was it built and by whom?
- What is your opinion about zoos? What purpose do they have?
- Do you think animals are happy in zoos? Why do you think that?

### PROJEKT 4 'The Town Musicians of Bremen'

- How did this story come into existence?
- Can you find out about the history of this story?
- Can you find other versions? In which way do they differ?
- Can you find other stories featuring animals in German-speaking countries?
- Do you know of any stories in your region that feature animals? Why do you think that is?

# EIN GESCHENK FÜR CHRISTIAN



Julia and Nick want to buy a birthday present for Christian. Max goes shopping with them.

## Fußgängerzone Göttingen



6

liihh! Ich mag Ratten überhaupt nicht.

7

Ich aber schon! Ratten sind so niedlich und fressen auch nicht viel.

Die Schlangen da drüben sind auch cool. Ich habe am liebsten Schlangen.

Schlangen mag ich auch nicht. In Australien sind viele Schlangen giftig.

Ich habe Angst vor Schlangen! Und sie fressen Ratten.

8

Christian ist ein Einzelkind. Er braucht ein Haustier. Ich werde ihn überraschen!

Und wie?

Ich kaufe die Ratte da, die braune!

Aber Christian hat doch ein Haustier, oder?

Nein, sein Wellensittich ist weggeflogen.

9

Und Christians Eltern?

Ich weiß nicht. Seine Eltern sind manchmal streng.

Kauf sie doch, Julia!

Im Ernst?

10

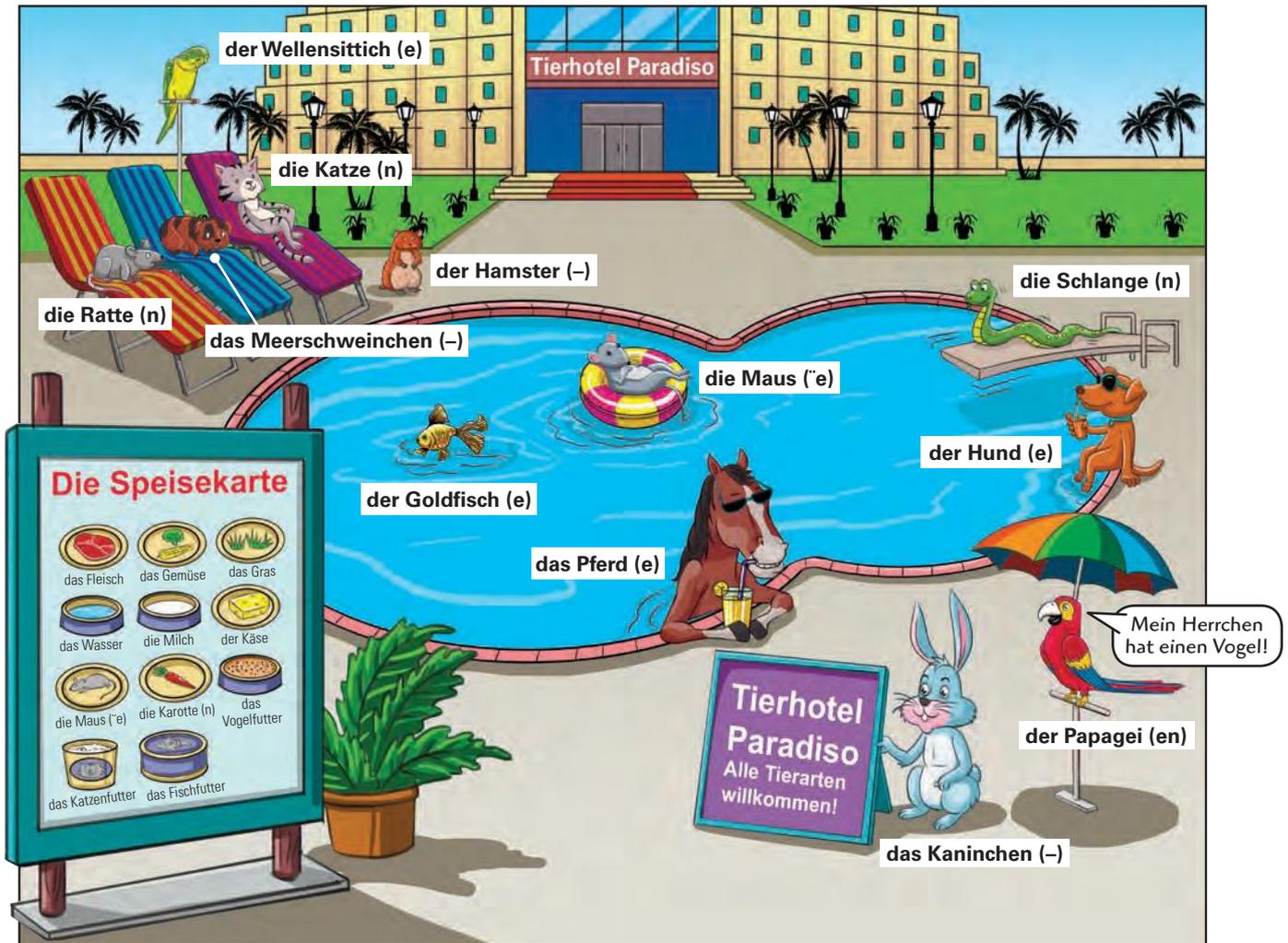
Ja klar, eine Ratte ist ideal.

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### True or false?

- 1 Max still has to buy a birthday present for Christian.
- 2 Rats are Max's favourite animal.
- 3 Julia is scared of rats and snakes.
- 4 Christian already has a lot of pets.
- 5 Christian's parents can be strict.
- 6 Julia buys Christian a hamster.

## 1 Animals and their foods



Das ist **ein Hund**. Er heißt Amadeus. Er frisst **Fleisch**.



Das ist **eine Katze**. Sie heißt Moppelchen. Sie frisst **Katzenfutter**.



### MACH MIT!

#### Let's talk about animals!

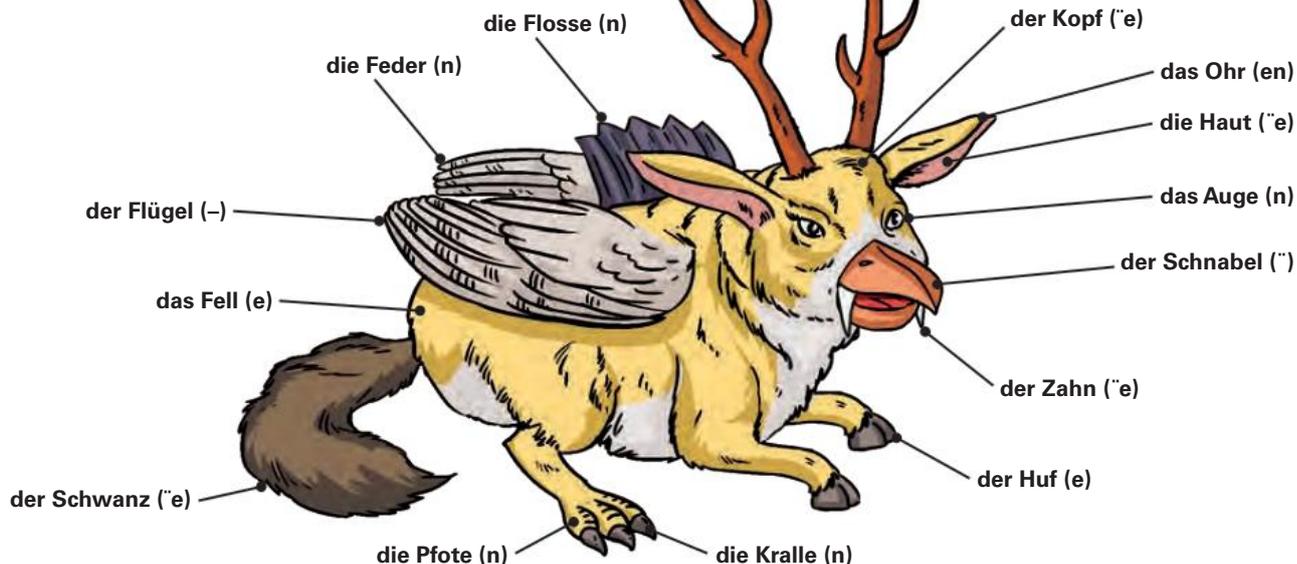
In pairs, create new dialogues about what these three animals eat.



## 2 Animal body parts



### WAS BIN ICH?



### MACH MIT!

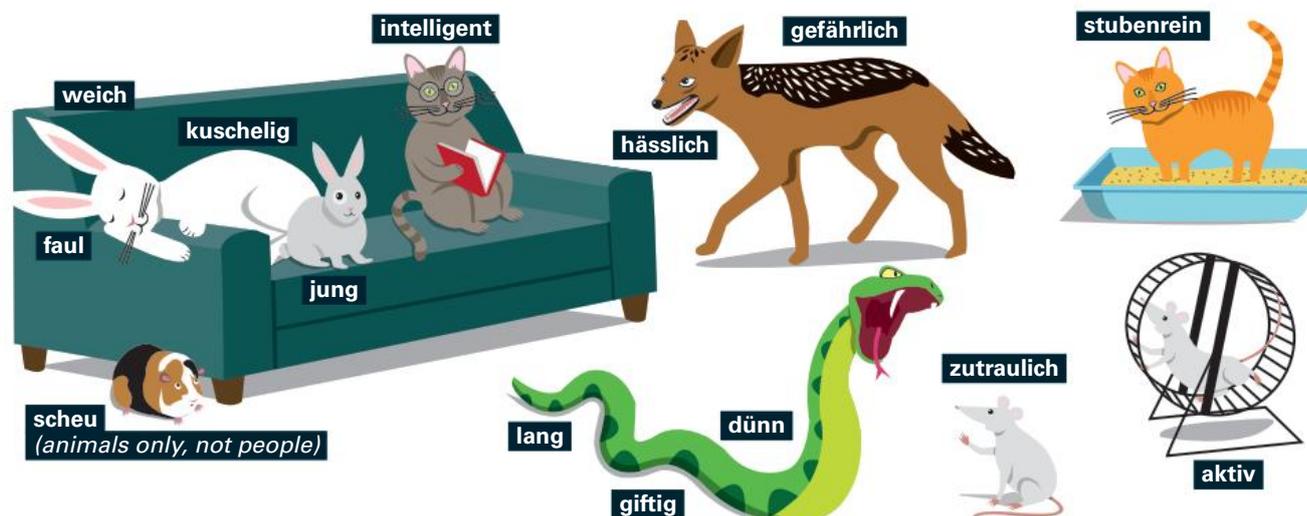
#### Let's talk more about animals!

Play the game 'Who am I?' in groups of three. Person A finds an animal and the other two (B and C) need to guess what it is by asking questions. Person A can only answer with 'yes' or 'no'. See the sample dialogue below. Play this game three times, so each player can choose an animal.

- = body part
- = food
- = animal

- B Bist du braun?
- A Ja, ich bin braun.
- B Hast du **einen Schnabel**?
- A Nein, ich habe **keinen Schnabel**.
- C Has du **Hufe**?
- A Ja, ich habe **Hufe**.
- C Und frisst du **Gras**?
- A Ja, ich fresse **Gras**.
- C Bist du **ein Pferd**?
- A Genau, ich bin **ein Pferd**. Jetzt bist du dran!

## 3 Describing pets





## MACH MIT!

### What does your animal look like?

Take turns to act out versions of this conversation with a partner. Change the highlighted text in each version – the type of animal, body parts and characteristics. Make up different animals.

## 4 Talking about what animals you like



## MACH MIT!

### What animals do you like?

Take turns to act out versions of this conversation with a partner. Change the highlighted text in each version – the types of animals and how much you like them. Talk about different animals.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

Is it similar or different in English?  
How closely do these follow the same pattern?

Ich **esse** Frühstück.  
**Friss** dein Vogelfutter, Topsy!  
Herr Lenz **isst** ein Ei.  
Die Katze **frisst** Katzenfutter.  
Anna und Julia **essen** Obst.  
Milli und Molli sind unsere Goldfische. Sie **fressen** Fischfutter.

## What's different about German?

### Doch

In the cartoon story, Max says, *Kauf **doch** einen Gutschein!* in response to Nick's statement, *Ich habe nicht so viel Geld mit.* This very useful word *doch* cannot easily be translated into English. In this example it means 'Just buy a voucher!'

*Doch* is mostly used as a positive response to a negative statement or question. Look at these two examples:

- Jessie kommt nicht zur Party, oder?  
(Jessie isn't coming to the party then?)
- **Doch**, sie kommt.  
(Yes, she *is* coming.)

- Seine Eltern sind sehr streng.  
(His parents are very strict.)
- Sie sind **doch** gar nicht streng!  
(But they're not at all strict!)

### Oder

The word **oder** can be used to turn a sentence into a question. In this case, it translates into English not as 'or', but as 'isn't it/he/she?' or 'isn't it so?' In the cartoon story, Max says, *Aber Christian hat doch ein Haustier, oder?* Here, *oder* could be translated as 'doesn't he?' In English, we vary the phrase according to the sentence, but in German we use *oder* as a simple way to check whether something is true or not.

### Doch, doch wohl, ja doch wohl

These three expressions can be used as fillers to make sentences more colloquial. This is only done in spoken German or in texts that reflect spoken language (e.g. diary entries). Here are three examples with English meanings:

- 1 Du gehst **doch** nicht zu Christian's Party, oder?  
(You're not going to Christian's party, are you?)
- 2 Du gehst **doch wohl** nicht zu Christian's Party, oder?  
(You're not seriously going to Christian's party, are you?)
- 3 Du gehst **ja doch wohl** nicht zu Christian's Party, oder?  
(I can't believe you're seriously considering going to Christian's party.)

All three sample questions can provoke the simple reply *Doch!*, meaning 'No, you are wrong, I am in fact going to Christian's party.' But Germans only need one word to express an entire sentence!

In the first example, the speaker assumes that the other person has made up their mind not to attend the party. In the second example, the speaker is in disbelief that the other person will attend the party. The third example is similar to the second, but expresses the speaker's disbelief even more strongly.

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Can you translate these sentences into English?

- Du magst keine Ratten, oder? Doch, ich liebe Ratten.
- Ihr mögt doch wohl keine Schlangen, oder? Doch, wir lieben Schlangen.
- Julia, du kaufst ja doch wohl keine Ratte, oder? Doch!

## Die Zeitung

### Die Schlange ist weg!

Der Zoo sucht seine Schlange. Sie ist grün und braun gestreift und sechs Meter lang. Sie ist scheu, und auch sehr giftig und gefährlich. Sie frisst gern Ratten und Mäuse. Wenn sie sehr großen Hunger hat, frisst sie auch manchmal ein Hündchen. Bitte informieren Sie den Zoo und die Polizei, wenn Sie die Schlange sehen.



### ★ TIERHOTEL PARADISO ★

Herrchen und Frauchen!  
Urlaub ohne Sorgen!  
Hier sind alle Tiere  
willkommen.

Für Informationen  
rufen Sie uns an.  
Familie V. Lenzen:  
0881-1739206

Wir bieten:

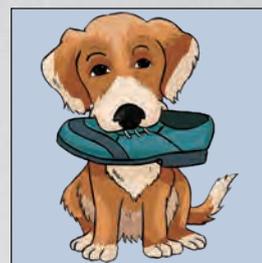
- lange Speisekarte
- relaxen am Pool
- perfekten Service
- katzenfreie Zone
- gutes Entertainment-Programm



### Liebe Hundefreunde

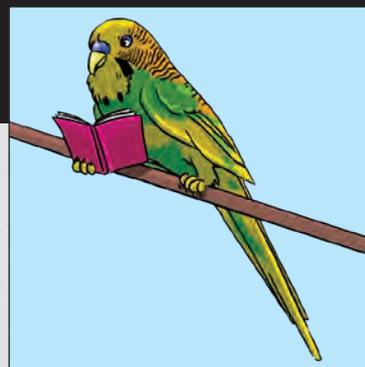
Wir reisen für drei Monate nach Neuseeland und suchen ein Heim für unser Hündchen. Böhnchen ist acht Jahre alt, sehr lieb und kinderfreundlich. Natürlich ist er stubenrein!

Bitte rufen Sie uns an:  
0171-9568135



### HABEN SIE EINEN VOGEL?

Wellensittich, intelligent, zutraulich und ruhig, sucht Herrchen, nicht faul, nett und stubenrein.



### KÄTZCHEN

6 Wochen alt, stubenrein, süß, sucht Frauchen, aktiv, mit Mäuschen im Haus.



### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Die Schlange frisst nur Mäuse und Ratten.
- 2 Böhnchen mag keine Kinder.
- 3 Im Tierhotel Paradiso sind alle Tiere willkommen.
- 4 Das Tierhotel Paradiso ist langweilig.
- 5 Der Wellensittich sucht ein aktives Herrchen.
- 6 Das Kätzchen ist nicht süß.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Why would a pet hotel have a cat-free zone?
- What do you notice about the words *Hündchen*, *Böhnchen*, *Kätzchen*, *Herrchen* and *Frauchen*? Can you guess what it means?
- Can you find out the two meanings of the phrase *einen Vogel haben*?
- If a snake escaped in your area, who would you contact? Why?
- In which part of the newspaper would these notices most likely be found?

In German, we often use different personal pronouns (such as *er*, *sie*, *es*) when referring to different people or animals. See if you can discover a pattern in the following examples.



Das ist mein Kätzchen.  
Es heißt Mimi.

Shutterstock.com/Sergiy Bykhunenko



Das ist meine Katze.  
Sie heißt Mimi.

Shutterstock.com/ANURAK PONGPATIMET



Das ist mein Hündchen.  
Es heißt Roger.

Shutterstock.com/Twinkle Studio



Das ist mein Hund.  
Er heißt Roger.

iStock.com/Rauluminate

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What is the difference in these examples? Why do you think that is?
- Is there something similar in English?

Can you see a pattern in the following examples?



Das ist meine Maus.  
Sie heißt Kläuschen.

iStock.com/SolStock



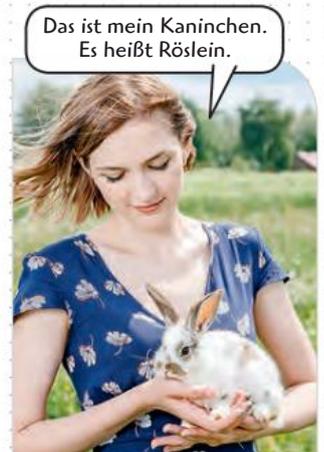
Das ist meine Schlange.  
Sie heißt Möhrchen.

iStock.com/pick-uppath



Das ist mein Wellensittich.  
Er heißt Vöglein.

Shutterstock.com/theapflueger



Das ist mein Kaninchen.  
Es heißt Röslein.

Shutterstock.com/Liuba Bilyk

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What can you tell from these examples?
- Why do you think German speakers do this?
- Is there a similar pattern in English?

## So ist Deutsch!

In German, attaching the suffix *-lein* or *-chen* to the end of a noun makes the object smaller, younger or cuter. We call this the 'diminutive' form, which means 'smaller'.

In some regions of German-speaking countries the suffix *-le* (as in *Häusle* and *Mäusle*) is used. This is mainly the case in southern Germany. In Bavaria and Austria, *-erl* is used, and you often find *-li* in Swiss German.

Regardless of the suffix, all forms are popular when referring to young people, young animals and pet names, and when expressing endearment.

The suffix *-chen* is slightly more common in modern German, while *-lein* is often found in older texts such as fairy tales, making it sound more dated.

Whenever *-chen* or *-lein* are added to a noun, the noun automatically becomes neuter:

die Katze → das Kätzchen, das Kätzlein  
der Hund → das Hündchen, das Hündlein

Because these suffixes are associated with cuteness, you would most often find them referring to animals that are widely regarded as cute – so, anything fluffy and furry. While the suffixes can be used for animals that are regarded as less cute (such as reptiles and insects), they rarely are. Therefore, you will find many *Kätzchen* and *Hündchen*, but not so many *Schlängchen* or *Rättchen*.

There are, however, a range of nouns for which the diminutive form has become the most commonly and often exclusively used one:

Eichhörnchen	(squirrel)
Erdmännchen	(meerkat)
Kaninchen	(rabbit)
Meerschweinchen	(guinea pig)
Seepferdchen	(sea horse)

Frauchen	(female pet owner)
Herrchen	(male pet owner)
Mädchen	(girl)
Männchen	(male animal)
Weibchen	(female animal)

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Can you think of some diminutives in English? How are they formed?
- Who or what are diminutives used for?
- Do you think there is a difference in the use of diminutives between German and English? What makes you think that?



Alamy Stock Photo / UrbarZone



## 1 Verbs – *essen* and *fressen*

In German there are two different ways to say 'to eat'. The verb *essen* is used only for humans, and the verb *fressen* is used for animals.

Ich **esse** Kuchen. (I eat cake.)  
 Mein Hund **frisst** Fleisch. (My dog eats meat.)

	essen (to eat – for humans)	fressen (to eat – for animals)
ich	esse	fresse
du	<b>isst</b>	<b>frisst</b>
er/sie/es	<b>isst</b>	<b>frisst</b>
wir	essen	fressen
ihr	esst	fresst
sie/Sie	essen	fressen

Both verbs are irregular (or strong) verbs and have a vowel change in the second and third person singular.

## 2 Possessive adjectives

You are already familiar with the possessive adjectives *mein(e)* and *dein(e)* from *Thema 4*. These possessive adjectives indicate ownership for the personal pronouns *ich* and *du*. Now we are introducing the possessive adjectives for *er*, *sie* and *es*.

German personal pronouns	German possessive adjectives	English possessive adjectives
ich	mein(e)	my
du	dein(e)	your
er	<b>sein(e)</b>	his
sie	<b>ihr(e)</b>	her
es	<b>sein(e)</b>	its

The endings of possessive adjectives are determined by the nouns they are describing. They follow the same pattern as *ein/eine*.

Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
mein Schwanz	meine Pfote	mein Fell	meine Augen
dein Schwanz	deine Pfote	dein Fell	deine Augen
<b>sein</b> Schwanz	<b>seine</b> Pfote	<b>sein</b> Fell	<b>seine</b> Augen
<b>ihr</b> Schwanz	<b>ihre</b> Pfote	<b>ihr</b> Fell	<b>ihre</b> Augen
<b>sein</b> Schwanz	<b>seine</b> Pfote	<b>sein</b> Fell	<b>seine</b> Augen

Das ist Angelos Gitarre. (That is Angelo's guitar.)  
 Das ist **seine** Gitarre. (That is **his** guitar.)

Hast du Ninas Tasche? (Have you got Nina's bag?)  
 Hast du **ihre** Tasche? (Have you got **her** bag?)

### 3 Modal verb – mögen

The modal verb *mögen* can be conjugated in two different ways. To say that you like something or someone, you use the *mag-/mög-* forms. To express a desire to have something, you use the *möcht-* form.

Ich **mag** Schlangen. (I like snakes.)  
 Ich **möchte** einen Hamster. (I would like [to have] a hamster.)

Wir **mögen** Tiere. (We like animals.)  
 Wir **möchten** ein Kätzchen. (We would like [to have] a kitten.)

	mögen	
	mag-/mög- (to like)	möcht- (would like)
ich	mag	möchte
du	magst	möchtest
er/sie/es	mag	möchte
wir	mögen	möchten
ihr	mögt	möchtet
sie/Sie	mögen	möchten

### 4 Comparative and superlative – gern

To express things you like doing, things you prefer doing and things you like doing the most, special forms of *gern* are needed. These forms are called the 'comparative' and 'superlative' forms.

Positive form 😊	Comparative form 😊😊	Superlative form 😊😊😊
Ich mag <b>gern</b> ...	Ich mag <b>lieber</b> ...	Ich mag <b>am liebsten</b> ...
I like ...	I like ... better.	I like best ...
Ich mag <b>gern</b> Fische. Ich spiele <b>gern</b> Tennis. Ich esse <b>gern</b> Obst.	Ich mag <b>lieber</b> Hamster. Ich spiele <b>lieber</b> Fußball. Ich esse <b>lieber</b> Kuchen.	Ich mag <b>am liebsten</b> Schlangen. Ich spiele <b>am liebsten</b> Hockey. Ich esse <b>am liebsten</b> Schokolade.

Ich mag gern Fische.



## Animals

der Goldfisch (e)	goldfish
der Hamster (-)	hamster
der Hund (e)	dog
der Papagei (en)	parrot
der Wellensittich (e)	budgie
die Katze (n)	cat
die Maus (¨e)	mouse
die Ratte (n)	rat
die Schlange (n)	snake
das Haustier (e)	pet
das Kaninchen (-)	rabbit
das Meerschweinchen (-)	guinea pig
das Pferd (e)	horse
das Tier (e)	animal

## Animal body parts

der Flügel (-)	wing
der Huf (e)	hoof
der Kopf (¨e)	head
der Schwanz (¨e)	tail
der Schnabel (¨)	beak
der Zahn (¨e)	tooth
die Feder (n)	feather
die Flosse (n)	fin
die Haut (¨e)	skin
die Krallen (n)	claw
die Pfote (n)	paw
das Auge (n)	eye
das Fell (e)	fur
das Ohr (en)	ear

## Animal food

die Karotte (n)	carrot
das Fleisch	meat
das Futter	pet food
das Fischfutter	fish food
das Katzenfutter	cat food
das Vogelfutter	bird food
das Gemüse (-)	vegetable
das Gras (¨er)	grass

## Other nouns

die Speisekarte (n)	menu
die Tierhandlung (en)	pet shop
das Tierhotel (s)	animal hotel

## Adjectives

aggressiv	aggressive
aktiv	active, energetic
dünn	thin
faul	lazy
gefährlich	dangerous
giftig	venomous, poisonous
ideal	ideal
intelligent	intelligent
jung	young
kuschelig	cuddly
lang	long
lieb	kind, nice
niedlich	cute
scheu	shy, timid
stubenrein	house-trained
zutraulich	trusting

## Verbs

Angst haben (vor)	to be afraid (of)
essen	to eat (for humans)
fressen	to eat (for animals)
streicheln	to pat
weggeflogen	flown away

## Adverb

gern	gladly, with pleasure
lieber	rather, prefer
am liebsten	best, the most

## Possessive adjectives

sein	his, its
ihr	her

## Useful expressions

Doch!	But yes!, Sure thing!
Gehen wir mal rein!	Let's go in!
Ich aber schon!	I do, though.
Im Ernst?	Seriously?
Oder?	Isn't it (so)?
So ein Mist!	Crap!
Und wie?	How so?

# Alles Gute zum Geburtstag!

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ☑ wish someone a happy birthday
- ☑ talk about giving and receiving presents
- ☑ talk about what types of music you like or dislike.

You will also learn about:

- ☑ birthday traditions
- ☑ music in German-speaking countries.

Although birthday celebrations are similar in many countries, not everyone celebrates a birthday in the same fashion. Some traditions vary from country to country or even region to region, and some come down to personal preference within a family.

There are also different ways of wishing someone a happy birthday. A big no-no in Germany, however, is wishing someone a happy birthday before the actual day – it is considered bad luck. In contrast, in some parts of Austria a birthday can be celebrated on the eve of the actual date.

While it is not uncommon for German speakers to sing the English version of 'Happy Birthday', there is a German language version:

*Zum Geburtstag viel Glück!  
Zum Geburtstag viel Glück!  
Zum Geburtstag liebe(r) [Name]!  
Zum Geburtstag viel Glück!  
Hoch soll er/sie leben!  
Hoch soll er/sie leben.  
Dreimal hoch!*

**It is common practice for the birthday child to bring a cake to school to share with classmates.**



Alamy Stock Photo/Joerg Boethling

Gery Images/Eric Audras

There are various ways to wish someone a happy birthday. Check out some of these phrases:

**Danke,  
Oma!**

**Herzlichen Glückwunsch  
zum Geburtstag, Axel!**

**Alles Gute zum  
Geburtstag, Tatjana!**

**Alles Liebe zum  
Geburtstag, Tessa!**

**Wir gratulieren, Herr Greiner!**

**Herzliche Gratulation, Oma!**

The person celebrating their birthday will always be referred to as *das Geburtstagskind*, regardless of their age!

And, of course, sometimes birthdays are forgotten, in which case this will come in handy:

**Herzlichen Glückwunsch nachträglich, Schatz!**

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- In what different ways can we say happy birthday in English? When and how would we use them?
- Why, do you think, do people use different ways to say happy birthday? Why do you think that?
- What are some of the different ways to celebrate birthdays in your country? Which one is your favourite and why?
- Do you celebrate your birthday? If so, how? If not, do you celebrate anyone else's birthday? Why?
- Why do you think in German we call the person celebrating the birthday *Geburtstagskind*? What do we say in English?

# { INFOS }

## GEBURTSTAGSTRADITIONEN

In German-speaking countries, no chores or homework are given to a child on their birthday. Some children have wooden birthday wreaths, with each year of their life represented by a candle (sometimes surrounding a larger, ornately decorated life candle). These candles are lit until a child turns 12. This is thought to be the origin of having candles on a birthday cake.

Other German traditions include throwing flour over someone who turns 16, and making a young man who is still unmarried at 30 sweep the steps of the town hall while his friends watch. This is supposed to show that he can be a good husband!



Alamy Stock Photo/Agencia Fotografica Caro



iStock.com/waldiru

## POPULAR PRESENTS

People give a wide range of birthday presents. They include books, sporting equipment, vouchers – especially for music and movie downloads – and clothes. Most importantly, they need to be age-appropriate and not too expensive. Children often make presents for their parents or other family members.

A birthday cake is also a staple of every birthday celebration. More often than not they are homemade rather than store bought. The idea is that someone has taken the time and effort to make something for the birthday boy or girl rather than spend money for someone else to do it.

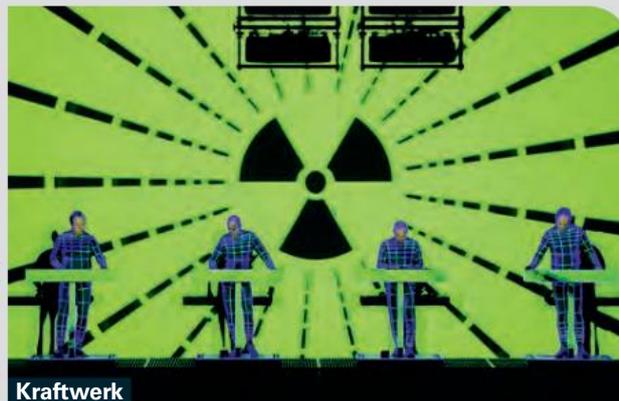
## DEUTSCHE MUSIK

So, what type of music would a young person in Germany download with their birthday voucher? It is often believed that all German speakers only listen to German music. While there is traditional German music such as *Volksmusik* (folk music) or *Schlager* (European popular music with light melodies and sentimental lyrics), the majority of young people listen to pretty much the same songs on the radio that you hear on your preferred station. However, there are many very popular German bands, some of which sing in English, some in German. Here are a few of them.



Tokio Hotel

Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance



Kraftwerk

Alamy Stock Photo/Daniele Baldi



Cro

Getty Images/Florian Ebener

**Tokio Hotel** is a German rock band. They have written both German and English language songs, and their album 'Dream Machine', released early in 2017, hit number one in iTunes sales worldwide.

**Kraftwerk** are widely considered as inventors of electropop and inspired a long line of musicians. It is said that no other band since the Beatles has contributed more to popular culture. Some even consider Kraftwerk to be the most influential group in international pop history. They were founded back in 1969 and remain active even today.

**Cro** is a German rapper and designer. He is known for wearing a panda mask during performances and public appearances. He describes his music as a mix between rap and pop, which he calls 'raop'.

Getty Images/Frank-Hoensch



**Lena Meyer-Landrut**



**Die Toten Hosen**

Getty Images/Isa-Foltin



**The Scorpions**

Getty Images/Franziska-Krug

**Lena Meyer-Landrut** is best known for winning the Eurovision Song Contest in 2010. This was only the second win for Germany in 55 years of participation. Lena's song 'Satellite' was downloaded more than 100 000 times in its first week after release, becoming Germany's fastest selling digital song ever.

**Die Toten Hosen** is probably the most famous German punk band. The name is a play on words, with **tote Hose** meaning 'dead boring' when the band is anything but. They are as famous for their music as for their support of political and social causes, with issues such as racism and xenophobia often represented in their lyrics.

Originally a hard rock band, **The Scorpions** are best known for their ballads 'Wind of change' and 'Still loving you'. They have played more than 5000 concerts in over 80 countries and have achieved numerous awards. Their song 'Wind of change' became the unofficial hymn for the fall of the Berlin Wall in 1989.

German new wave artist **Nena** is probably best known for her 1980 song '99 Luftballons' or '99 Red Balloons', an English re-recording of the German song one year after its original release. In 2007 in Hamburg, she founded her own school, which rejects traditional education in favour of free learning – for example, students decide themselves when and what they want to learn, and there are no periods dedicated to certain subjects.



**Nena**

Getty Images/Isa-Foltin

**PROJEKTE**

**PROJEKT 1 Birthday traditions**

Create a digital presentation or poster about different birthday traditions, answering the following questions.

- What do you think of the different birthday traditions outlined here?
- Which traditions do you like and which do you dislike? Why do you think that?
- Do you have birthday traditions in your family? What are they? Where do they originate from?
- What can you find out about birthday traditions in other countries? What do you like/dislike about these traditions?

**PROJEKT 2 German music**

Create a digital presentation or poster about the artists mentioned in this section. Include answers to the following questions.

- Which band or artist do you like best? Why?
- What's happening on the German charts and on the charts in your country? How do they differ? Are there similarities? Why do you think that is?
- What can you find out about *Volksmusik* and *Schlager*? Are there similar types of music in your country?
- Is there a particularly popular style of music in your country? What is it and what are its characteristics?
- Is there a traditional style of music in your country? Where does it originate from?
- What do you generally listen to and why?

# CHRISTIANS GEBURTSTAGSPARTY



10.1



Sibel



Christian



Nick



Max



Julia



Christians Mutter



Christians Vater

Sibel, Nick, Max and Julia have been invited to Christian's birthday party.

## Bei Christian

**1**

Alles Liebe zum Geburtstag, Christian! Hier ist mein Geschenk.

Vielen Dank! Na, komm mal rein! Du bist die Erste.

**2**

Ahh ... eine Mütze. Danke!

Echt cool!

Ja, für die Klassenfahrt nächste Woche. Wie findest du sie?

**3**

Hallo, ihr Zwei!

Happy Birthday! Hier sind unsere Geschenke.

Rate mal, was das ist!

**4**

Keine Ahnung! Super! Ein Download-Gutschein. Auch ideal für die Klassenfahrt! Ich habe ein Smartphone von meinen Eltern bekommen.

**5**

Und ein Hockey T-Shirt. Genial!

**6**

Hallo, Christian, bin ich die Letzte?

Ja, fast.

Mein Geschenk ist eine Überraschung.

Was ist das?

7 Cool ... eine Ratte!!

8 Christian, die Ratte muss im Käfig bleiben.  
Aber Frau Gruber, Ratten sind doch harmlos.  
liiihh, wie ekelhaft!

9 Ach, du Schreck! Die Ratte ist weg! Fang sie sofort! Ich hasse Ratten!  
Elsa, bleib sitzen! Wir finden sie gleich.  
Keine Panik! Da ist sie, Mama, auf dem Sofa!  
Vielleicht war das keine gute Idee!

10 Ihr Kuchen schmeckt total lecker, Frau Gruber.  
Vielen Dank, Nick. Der Gugelhupf ist Christians Lieblingskuchen.  
Jetzt ist es auch mein Lieblingskuchen!

11 Guck mal! Die Ratte frisst deinen Kuchen auch, Mama!  
Nein! Ich möchte die Ratte nicht in meinem Haus!

**Später**

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### True or false?

- 1 It's Christian's birthday party.
- 2 Julia gives him a hockey shirt.
- 3 Jessie and Anna arrive last at the birthday party.
- 4 Mrs Gruber thinks the rat should be let out of the cage.
- 5 Christian's birthday cake is Nick's favourite cake.
- 6 Mr Gruber thinks the rat should get out of the house.

## 1 Giving someone a birthday present



<b>A</b>	Alles Liebe zum Geburtstag!	Hier ist dein Geschenk.
	Alles Gute zum Geburtstag!	Ich hoffe du magst es.
	Herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag!	Wie findest du es?

## 2 Thanking someone for a birthday present



<b>B</b>	Cool ...	ein Fußball.	Er ist cool.	Danke!
	Toll ...	eine Mütze.	Sie ist toll.	Vielen Dank!
	Super ...	ein Buch.	Es ist super.	Danke schön!
	Echt klasse ...	ein Computerspiel.	Es ist echt klasse.	Danke sehr!



- der Fußball (‘e)
- der Gutschein (e)
- der Kopfhörer (-)
- der Lautsprecher (-)
- die Mütze (n)
- die Schallplatte (n)
- das Buch (‘er)
- das Computerspiel (e)
- das Geschenk (e)

### MACH MIT!

#### Giving and receiving presents

Take turns to act out this conversation with a partner. Change the people and presents with the choices below.



Karin



Tim



Monika



Alexander

3 Saying who a present belongs to



Both versions of the possessive adjective are acceptable; however, *eure* is more colloquial and therefore more widely used, especially in spoken language.



**MACH MIT!**

**What belongs to whom?**

Take turns to act out this conversation with a partner. Can you change the items? Can you see a pattern in the grammar?

4 What music do you like?



Die Musikarten		
Countrymusik	klassische Musik	Rock
Dance	Popmusik	Schlager
Heavymetal	Punkrock	Techno
Hip-Hop	R'n'B	Volksmusik
Jazz	Rap	

**MACH MIT!**

**What types of music do you like?**

Take turns to act out this conversation with a partner. Change the different music styles.

## What's the rule?

Look at these sentences to discover something about German.

Das ist **mein** Fußball.  
Das ist **dein** Fußball.  
Das ist **ihr** Fußball.  
Das ist **sein** Fußball.  
Das ist **unser** Fußball.  
Das ist **euer** Fußball.  
Das ist **ihr** Fußball.

Is it similar to something that occurs in English?

Now look at these sentences and see if you can find a pattern.

der Gutschein: Das ist **ein** Gutschein. **Er** ist super.  
die Mütze: Das ist **eine** Mütze. **Sie** ist cool.  
das Buch: Das ist **ein** Buch. **Es** ist toll.

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Can you translate the following German sentences into English?

- Die Ratte ist cool. Sie frisst Kuchen.
- Christian mag seinen Fußball. Er ist cool.
- Max schenkt Christian ein Hockey T-Shirt. Es ist super.
- Christian hat viele Schallplatten. Sie sind echt klasse.

Do you notice a difference between the two languages? Is there a particular expression you find more difficult to translate than the others? Why do you think this is?

## What's different about German?



When speaking German, there is a difference in pronunciation between short and long vowels that you cannot always tell from the spelling.

Here are some long vowels:

- a Nase, **haben**, **da**, **Panik**
- e **Idee**, **Kaffee**, **ekelhaft**, **Feder**
- i **Liebe**, **hier**, **ihr**, **Musik**
- o **Techno**, **ohne**, **wo**
- u alles **Gute**, **Buch**, **Kuchen**, **Gutschein**

Here are some short vowels:

- a **Ratte**, **kann**, **danke**, **fast**, **Klasse**
- e **Schreck**, **lecker**, **essen**, **fressen**
- i **mich**, **nicht**, **Hit**, **ist**
- o **hoffen**, **bekommen**, **Hip-Hop**, **toll**
- u **unser**, **Glückwunsch**, **guck mal**

Sometimes the difference between short and long vowels may be reflected in German spelling.

There are some signs to look out for. For example, short vowels are often followed by:

- double consonants (Ratte, kann, fressen, müssen)
- consonant combinations such as **ck** or **tz** (Schreck, lecker, spitz)

While long vowels are sometimes marked by:

- a lengthening **h** (fahren, gehen, sehen, ihr)
- a lengthening **e** (Liebe, hier, Brief)
- a doubling of the vowel (**Idee**, **Meerschweinchen**, **Neuseeland**)

The letters 'i' and 'e' in *Liebe*, *hier* and *Brief* form a diphthong – two vowels following each other. A way to remember correct pronunciation for this is the rhyme: 'In German, when i and e go walking, the first one does the talking.'

## Liebe Grüße



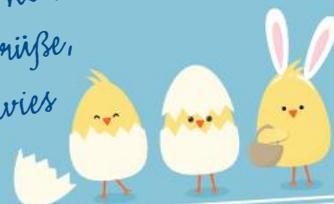
Liebe Sonja,  
herzlichen Glückwunsch  
zum Geburtstag!  
Ich hoffe, du hast schöne  
Geschenke bekommen.  
Dein Dirk

Liebe Julia,  
ich hab' dich lieb!  
Dein X

Lieber Ralf,  
nachträglich herzlichen Glückwunsch  
zum Geburtstag!  
Ich habe deinen Geburtstag vergessen.  
Entschuldigung!  
Alles Liebe und Gute!  
Deine Anja



Liebe Familie Steiner,  
frohe Ostern!  
Hoffentlich kommt der Osterhase!  
Herzliche Grüße,  
Familie Davies

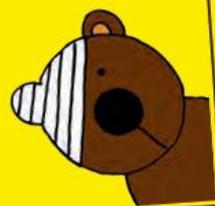


Gutes neues Jahr  
und einen guten  
Rutsch!

Lieber Herr Lenz,  
frohe Weihnachten!  
wünscht Ihnen Klasse 8a

Dem glücklichen Paar,  
alles Gute zum Hochzeitstag  
und viel Glück für die Zukunft.  
Wünscht euch  
Familie Irmak

Hallo Manfred,  
gute Besserung!  
Ich hoffe, du bist  
bald wieder gesund.  
Ich denke an dich!  
Miriam



### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Dirk hofft, Sonja hat gute Geschenke zu Weihnachten bekommen.
- 2 Anja hat Ralfs Geburtstag vergessen.
- 3 Herr Lenz bekommt eine Karte zu Ostern.
- 4 Manfred ist krank.
- 5 Familie Irmak schreibt eine Geburtstagskarte.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Why does Julia's admirer keep their identity a secret? Can you tell from what is written whether the card is from a boy or a girl?
- How does Anja feel about having forgotten Ralf's birthday? What makes you say that?
- Why would a class write their teacher a Christmas card? How can you tell the card is not from a friend of his?
- Why do people write cards on New Year's Eve? What's the purpose?
- What does the Irmak family wish the newlyweds and why?

# Sprache und Kultur

German is often very precise in the way it is expressed, especially when using nouns. Have a look at these nouns.



der Englischlehrer



die Klassenfahrt



das Geburtstagskind



das Computerspiel



die Hausaufgaben

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Can you see a pattern in all the nouns?
- Why do you think German speakers do this?
- Can we do the same in English?
- Are there other ways in English to convey the same meaning?

## So ist Deutsch!

German has many compound nouns, which are words of two or more nouns that are combined to create a new meaning. There is almost no limit to how long a German noun becomes, as long as its meaning still makes sense!

The most famous German compound noun is probably this:

**der Donaudampfschiffahrtsgesellschaftskapitän**  
(the captain of the Danube steamship company)

With every noun you add to the chain, your word becomes more specific and describes an additional detail of the overall word. But no matter how long your noun becomes, the whole word always takes the gender of the last noun. So even though the individual nouns have different genders, the gender for the entire noun is masculine because that is the gender of the last noun:

die Donau	the Danube
der Dampf	the steam
das Schiff	the ship
die Fahrt	the travel
die Gesellschaft	the company
<b>der Kapitän</b>	the captain

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

- What do you think *die Hockeyshirtlogofarbe* means? (That's right, it's the colour of the logo on the hockey shirt.)
- How about *die Fußballspielerlieblingsmusikcd?* (Yes, it's the CD of the favourite music of the soccer player.)

Some compound nouns can be understood by simply translating the individual nouns. For example:

- das Krankenhaus:** literally 'the house for sick people', the hospital
- der Briefträger:** literally 'someone carrying letters', the postman

But other compound nouns you cannot literally translate into English. Can you work out the meaning of the following?

- a der Ohrwurm
- b das Arbeitstier
- c der Glückspilz
- d der Geisterfahrer
- e der Liebeskummer

Here are the literal translations followed by their actual meanings:

- a 'ear worm' – a song you cannot get out of your head
- b 'work animal' – a workaholic
- c 'lucky mushroom' – a very lucky person
- d 'ghost driver' – a driver going in the opposite direction to the rest of the traffic
- e 'love sorrow' – lovesickness.

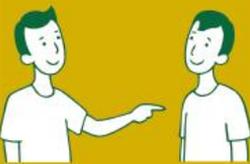
## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Can you find any more of these most curious German compound nouns?



## 1 Possessive adjectives in the nominative case

Remember: The endings of possessive adjectives change depending on the noun they are describing. They follow the same pattern as *ein/eine*.

	1st person singular 	2nd person singular 	3rd person masculine singular 	3rd person singular feminine 
der Fußball	Das ist <b>mein</b> Fußball.	... <b>dein</b> Fußball.	... <b>sein</b> Fußball.	... <b>ihr</b> Fußball.
das Buch	Das ist <b>mein</b> Buch.	... <b>dein</b> Buch.	... <b>sein</b> Buch.	... <b>ihr</b> Buch.
die Schallplatte	Das ist <b>meine</b> Schallplatte.	... <b>deine</b> Schallplatte.	... <b>seine</b> Schallplatte.	... <b>ihre</b> Schallplatte.
die Geschenke	Das sind <b>meine</b> Geschenke.	... <b>deine</b> Geschenke.	... <b>seine</b> Geschenke.	... <b>ihre</b> Geschenke.

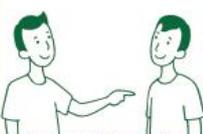
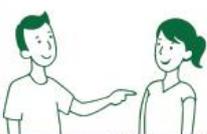
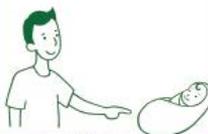
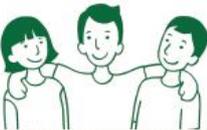
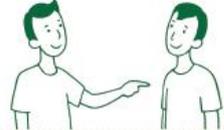
Verenas und dein Vater sind echt nett. → **Eure** Väter sind echt nett.  
 Xavier und ich machen die Hausaufgaben. → **Unsere** Hausaufgaben sind schwierig.  
 Meine Großeltern sind nicht zu Hause. → **Ihr** Auto ist nicht da.

Wer ist **euer** Mathelehrer? (Who is **your** Maths teacher?)  
**Eure** Ratte ist echt cool! (**Your** rat is really cool!)  
 Das ist **unser** Auto. (That is **our** car.)

The possessive adjective for *Sie* (you, formal) is *Ihr*.

– Entschuldigung, wo ist meine Brille?  
 – Frau Meier, **Ihre** Brille liegt auf dem Tisch.

Here are all possessive adjectives at a glance.

<b>Singular</b>	<b>mein(e)</b> my 	<b>dein(e)</b> your 	<b>sein(e)</b> his 	<b>ihr(e)</b> her 	<b>sein(e)</b> its 
<b>Plural</b>	<b>unser(e)</b> our 	<b>euer/eure</b> your 	<b>ihr(e)</b> their 	<b>Ihr(e)</b> Your 	

## 2 Possessive adjectives in the accusative case

Possessive adjectives that follow verbs such as *haben*, *finden*, *tragen*, *mögen*, *fressen*, *essen*, *hören* and *reparieren* are part of the **object** of a sentence and have to be used in the **accusative** case. They change their endings according to the noun they are describing. Pay special attention to the masculine nouns!

	der Fußball	das Buch	die Schalplatte	die Geschenke
	Die Ratte frisst ...			
1st person singular	... <b>meinen</b> Fußball.	... <b>mein</b> Buch.	... <b>meine</b> Schalplatte.	... <b>meine</b> Geschenke.
2nd person singular	... <b>deinen</b> Fußball.	... <b>dein</b> Buch.	... <b>deine</b> Schalplatte.	... <b>deine</b> Geschenke.
3rd person singular (masculine)	... <b>seinen</b> Fußball.	... <b>sein</b> Buch.	... <b>seine</b> Schalplatte.	... <b>seine</b> Geschenke.
3rd person singular (feminine)	... <b>ihren</b> Fußball.	... <b>ihr</b> Buch.	... <b>ihre</b> Schalplatte.	... <b>ihre</b> Geschenke.
3rd person singular (neuter)	... <b>seinen</b> Fußball.	... <b>sein</b> Buch.	... <b>seine</b> Schalplatte.	... <b>seine</b> Geschenke.
1st person plural	... <b>unseren</b> Fußball.	... <b>unser</b> Buch.	... <b>unsere</b> Schalplatte.	... <b>unsere</b> Geschenke.
2nd person plural	... <b>euren</b> Fußball.	... <b>euer</b> Buch.	... <b>eure</b> Schalplatte.	... <b>eure</b> Geschenke.
3rd person plural	... <b>ihren</b> Fußball.	... <b>ihr</b> Buch.	... <b>ihre</b> Schalplatte.	... <b>ihre</b> Geschenke.

Meine Schwester mag **ihre** neue Mütze.

(My sister likes her new beanie.)

Will liest **sein** Lieblingsbuch.

(Will reads his favourite book.)

Christian findet **seine** Geschenke toll.

(Christian finds his presents great.)

Mein Vater repariert **unseren** Fußball.

(My father repairs our football.)





## Wishing someone a happy birthday

Alles Gute zum Geburtstag!	All the best for your birthday!
Alles Liebe zum Geburtstag!	Much love on your birthday!
Herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag!	Happy Birthday!
Gratulation!	Congratulation!
Hoch soll er/sie leben!	German version of 'Hip hip hooray!'

## Birthday presents

der Fußball (ˈe)	soccer ball
der Gutschein (e)	voucher
der Käfig (e)	cage
die Karte (n)	greeting card
die Mütze (n)	beanie
die Schallplatte (n)	(vinyl) record
die Überraschung (en)	surprise
das Buch (ˈer)	book
das Computerspiel (e)	computer game
das Geschenk (e)	present

## Possessive adjectives

mein/e	my
deine/e	your
sein/e	his, its
ihre/e	her
unser/unsere	our
euer/eure	your (plural)
sein/seine	their
Ihr/Ihre	your (formal)

## Other nouns

das Geburtstagskind	birthday boy/girl
die Klassenfahrt (en)	class trip

## Verbs

bekommen	to receive
bleiben	to remain
hoffen	to hope
reparieren	to repair
sitzen	to sit

## Useful expressions

der/die Erste	the first
der/die Letzte	the last
Ach du Schreck!	Oh dear!
Einen guten Rutsch!	Have a good start to the new year.
Fang sie sofort!	Catch it straight away!
Genial!	Excellent!, Ingenious!
Kein Problem!	No problem!
Keine Panik!	Don't panic!
Na, komm mal rein!	Come on in!
Rate mal, was das ist!	Have a guess what this is!
Schatz	darling

## Adjectives

harmlos	harmless
klasse	great

# Bei uns zu Hause

In this unit you will learn to:

- describe different types of homes
- talk about where you live
- describe your home
- say what house chores you do.

You will also learn about:

- where people live in Germany-speaking countries
- how German and Australian/New Zealander lifestyles compare.

In the German-speaking countries, as in Australia and New Zealand, a large proportion of people live in big cities and regional towns. In big cities, people live in the inner city (*in der Innenstadt*) or the suburbs (*in den Vororten*). A smaller proportion of people live in very small towns or villages and some live in rural areas. Settlement in both areas has been influenced by geographical features and the needs of the population. The long history of Europe means that traditional buildings are often smaller than the more modern buildings we are used to. Populations are very dense in big cities and people live close together.

Alamy Stock Photo/Karel Sobolewski

Ich wohne in einer Wohnung in einem Wohnblock.  
Wir haben einen Schrebergarten in der Nähe.



Alamy Stock Photo/imageBROKER



Wir haben Glück. Unser Haus hat einen Garten.

Alamy Stock Photo/Michael Klíneč

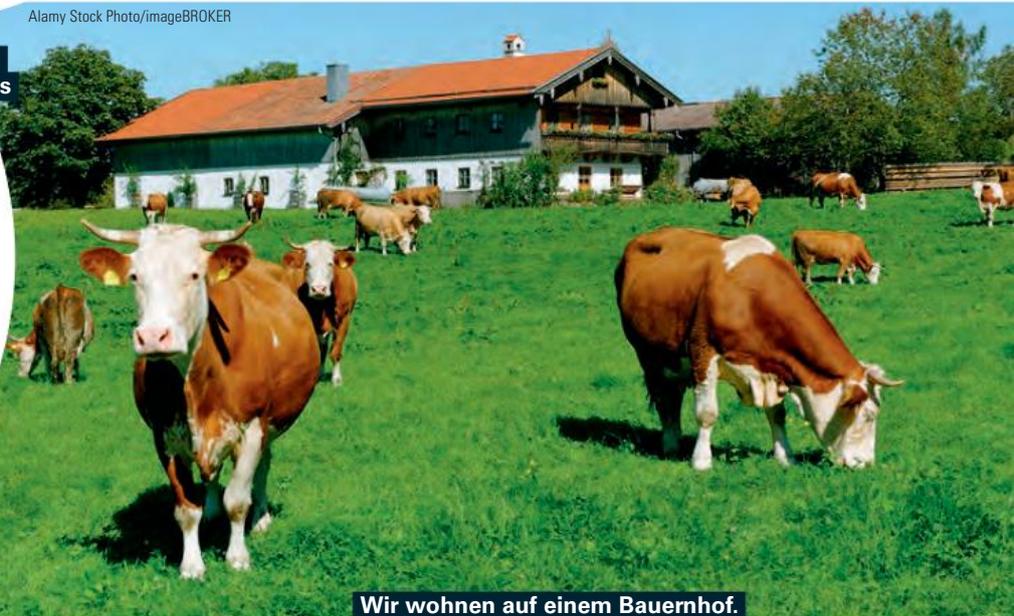


Unsere Wohnung ist alt und klein, aber sie ist in der Stadtmitte.

Alamy Stock Photo/imageBROKER



Wir wohnen in einem kleinen Dorf. Das Haus ist sehr traditionell.



Wir wohnen auf einem Bauernhof.

Alamy Stock Photo/Bernhard Classen



Unser Großvater arbeitet oft im Schrebergarten.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What types of housing do you see in these images?
- Which type of housing is most similar to where you live? In what ways?
- Would you like to live in the other types of houses? Explain why.
- What influence does the environment of your area have on the type of housing?
- What influence does the housing you live in have on your daily life?

## ZU HAUSE IN DEUTSCHLAND

Unlike Australians and New Zealanders, most Germans live in buildings with up to ten separate apartments. Roughly a quarter of the German population lives in high-rise buildings and a third in detached or single-family homes (*Einfamilienhäuser*). Single-family homes have cellars (*Keller*) and attics (*Dachböden*). The cellar is mostly used for storage and is where people do their laundry. Some people live in shared accommodation (*Wohngemeinschaften*). Multi-generational households used to be common, but less than 0.5 per cent of people live this way in modern Germany. Most people rent their homes.

Wir wohnen in einem Einfamilienhaus.



Die Waschmaschine ist im Badezimmer.



Der Dachboden ist nützlich für die Familie.



Unsere Küche ist ziemlich groß.



### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What proportion of Germans live in dwellings other than apartments or detached houses?
- What type of accommodation do you think these people have?
- What difference does older, traditional housing make to the way people live?
- Why do you think there are fewer multi-generational households these days?
- Have living arrangements changed over generations where you live?

**WHAT DO YOU THINK?**

- Do most people in your country rent or buy their homes? Why do you think this is so?
- Research online to find out more about renting a property in Germany. Why do you think so many people rent in Germany? How might the conditions be different to those in your country?
- If you could rent a home in Germany, where would you like to live? And in what sort of dwelling?



Unser Wohnblock ist sehr modern.



Unser Haus ist sehr traditionell.

**PROJEKTE**

Choose one of the *Projekte* and present your findings in a digital presentation or poster.

**PROJEKT 1 Mein Haus**

Your house needs major repairs and your family has to move into a block of flats. Do some research and create a plan of a typical German apartment (*Wohnung*). What rooms does it have? How will your family adapt?

**PROJEKT 2 Unser Schrebergarten**

Research *Schrebergärten* (shared gardens or allotments). Find out what they are, where they are, and why they are so popular in Germany. Include information on these types of gardens near where you live. You might like to draw a plan of one of these gardens.

**PROJEKT 3 Bei uns zu Hause**

When visiting a German home, you will usually be asked (or expected) to remove your shoes and put on slippers (*Hausschuhe*). Do some research about other traditions in a German-speaking home.



The class is on a school trip to Harz, where they will be staying at a guesthouse.

## Im Bus



## Im Gästehaus



Später

6 Wir müssen unser Abendessen vorbereiten.

7 Nach dem Abendessen räumen wir die Spülmaschine ein und putzen die Küche.

8 Jeder muss helfen!  
Einverstanden, Herr Lenz! Ich sauge im Esszimmer staub. Julia, hilfst du mit?  
Ja, gerne.

9 Wo schlafen die Mädchen, Herr Lenz?  
Ihr schlaft im Schlafzimmer im zweiten Stock, neben dem großen Badezimmer. Die Jungs schlafen im Schlafzimmer über der Küche. Es ist zwischen der Toilette und dem kleinen Badezimmer.

10 Um wie viel Uhr stehen wir auf?  
Bitte, nicht zu früh!  
Schon gut. Um etwa 7.00 Uhr. Wer hilft morgen mit dem Frühstück?  
Nick und ich!

## WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

### True or false?

- 1 The guesthouse has five bedrooms.
- 2 The guesthouse has three bathrooms and three toilets.
- 3 The sleeping quarters are on the first, second and third floors.
- 4 The guesthouse has eight bedrooms.
- 5 The guests can prepare their own meals.

## 1 Talking about where you live



### MACH MIT!

#### Pairwork

Read the dialogue and create new dialogues by replacing the locations in bold with others. Use the vocabulary below to help you.

#### What type of dwelling?

in einer Wohnung  
in einem großen Haus  
in einem Einfamilienhaus  
auf einem Bauernhof  
in einem kleinen Haus  
in einem Wohnblock

#### Where is it?

in der Innenstadt  
in der Stadtmitte  
in den Vororten  
auf dem Land  
in einem Dorf  
am Meer



Shutterstock.com/Markus Gann



Alamy Stock Photo/David South



Alamy Stock Photo/nagelestock.com



Alamy Stock Photo/Agencia Fotograficzna Caro

## 2 Describing your home



Susanne, welche Zimmer hast du in deinem Haus?



Mein Haus hat ein Wohnzimmer, eine Küche, drei Schlafzimmer, ein Badezimmer, eine Toilette und ein Spielzimmer. Im Garten gibt es ein Schwimmbad.



**MACH MIT!****Group work**

Study the dialogue in which Susanne describes her home. Then ask four of your classmates about their homes. How many bedrooms do they have? How many living rooms? Do they have a pool or big garden?

Start with yourself. Copy and complete the table in your notebook, adding other rooms or spaces that you or your classmates might have.

Name:	<i>Ich</i>				
Wohnzimmer					
Küche					
Esszimmer					
Schlafzimmer					
Badezimmer					
Toilette					
Büro					
Spielzimmer					
Garten					
Schwimmbad					
Garage					
Keller					
Dachboden					

**3 Talking about house chores**

staubsaugen



das Geschirr abspülen



staubwischen



Fenster putzen



die Spülmaschine ausräumen



den Tisch decken

**MACH MIT!****Pairwork**

Read the two conversations below and invent new answers by replacing the verbs in **bold** with other verbs pictured. You can also change the frequency of when you do the chores by changing the time expressions in *italics*. Use the text box to help you with different locations.

- A** Sag mal, machst du Hausarbeit?  
**B** Ja, natürlich. Ich **räume** *jeden Tag* im Esszimmer **auf**.  
**A** Also, was machst du im Haushalt?  
**B** Ich **wische** *am Samstag* im ganzen Haus **staub**.

**Wo?**

in meinem Schlafzimmer  
 in der Küche  
 im Esszimmer  
 im Flur  
 im Wohnzimmer  
 im Bad  
 im Elternzimmer  
 im Büro

## What's the rule?

Look at the nouns and then the locations.

der Wald	<b>im</b> Wald
die Innenstadt	<b>in der</b> Innenstadt
die Stadt	<b>in der</b> Stadt
das Dorf	<b>im</b> Dorf
die Vororte (plural)	<b>in den</b> Vororten

How does the preposition **in** change in the location phrases? Why do you think this is?

## What's different about German?

Look at these sentences closely.

Ich wische im Esszimmer staub.	(I dust in the dining room.)
Du wäschst das Geschirr ab.	(You wash the dishes. / You do the washing-up.)
Sie räumt ihr Zimmer auf.	(She tidies up her room.)
Wir räumen die Spülmaschine aus.	(We unload the dishwasher.)
Ihr bringt den Müll raus.	(You take out the rubbish.)

What is the difference between how the German sentences and English sentences are constructed?

Find other sentences in German in *Thema 11* that also have this structure. Make a list of the expressions (verbs) and work out what they have in common. What types of expressions are they?

### LET'S TRANSLATE!

Look at the following sentences and translate them into English.

What do you notice about the structure of the sentences, specifically in the placements of verbs?

- Wir müssen unser Abendessen vorbereiten.
- Wir können zusammen im Wohnzimmer essen.
- Jemand muss im Esszimmer aufräumen und staubsaugen.



Getty Images/Hinterhaus Productions

## Interview für die Schülerzeitung mit Nick und Anna: Wie wohnt man in Australien?



**Christian:** Also, Nick. Das Gästehaus im Dorf war echt groß, so wie dein Haus in Australien, oder?

**Nick:** Unser Haus in Australien ist gar nicht so groß. Es hat nur ein Stockwerk, nur drei Schlafzimmer und ein Wohnzimmer. Es hat aber einen großen Garten mit Schwimmbad und eine geräumige Küche. Meine Mutter arbeitet zu Hause und es gibt ein Büro im Haus.



**Christian:** Wow! Ein Schwimmbad! Aber wo ist der Keller?

**Nick:** Sehr selten haben Häuser in Australien Keller oder Dachböden.

**Christian:** Keine Keller? Wo sind die Waschmaschinen?

**Nick:** Die Waschmaschine ist oft in einem Zimmer neben dem Badezimmer.

**Christian:** Wie ist dein Haus in Australien, Jessie? Wohnst du auch in einem Einfamilienhaus?

**Jessie:** Ja, wie die meisten Leute in Australien. Viele Leute wohnen in Wohnungen in den Großstädten. Mein Haus ist alt und ziemlich klein. Wir haben einen kleinen Garten hinter dem Haus und nicht viel Platz vor dem Haus.

**Christian:** Jessie, du wohnst bei Anna in einer Wohnung. Wie findest du das?

**Jessie:** Ich finde es ganz toll. Anna und ich teilen ein Zimmer und neben dem Zimmer im Flur steht ein Schreibtisch, den wir benutzen, um Hausaufgaben zu machen. Das Wohnzimmer ist sehr schön und gemütlich, und die Familie verbringt viel Zeit dort zusammen. Wir lesen, sehen fern und manchmal spielen wir Karten.



Shutterstock.com/Lew Kropotov



Shutterstock.com/Shuang Li

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

#### Richtig oder falsch?

- 1 Nick wohnt in einem großen Haus.
- 2 Nicks Haus hat vier Schlafzimmer.
- 3 Jessies Haus hat keinen Garten.
- 4 Jessie wohnt in einer Wohnung in Deutschland.
- 5 Bei Anna hat Jessie ihr eigenes Zimmer.
- 6 Jessie und Anna machen ihre Hausaufgaben in ihrem Schlafzimmer.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What aspects of Nick's house surprise Christian? Why?
- What are the main differences between a typical dwelling in Germany and Nick's house?
- In what ways is Nick's house usual for Australia?
- In what ways is Jessie's house also common in Australia? Why?
- Why do you think that Nick and Jessie are enjoying their experience in Germany?

# Sprache und Kultur

German and English have many words in common in relation to the topics 'housing' and 'living'. Here are some examples:

der Garten  
die Garage  
die Toilette  
das Einfamilienhaus  
das Gästehaus  
das Haus  
in, hinter, über, unter

## LET'S TRANSLATE!

- What do these words mean? Was it easy to work out their meaning? Why?
- What about the following words? Can you work them out in the context of houses and home?

der Keller

die Küche

das Bad(ezimmer)

## So ist Deutsch!



### Compound nouns

You have come across many compound nouns in this chapter. For example:

das Esszimmer  
das Wohnzimmer  
das Schlafzimmer  
der Wohnblock

In German, a compound noun is formed from the original words. Sometimes a connector is needed between nouns, which is usually *-n-*, *-en-*, *-s-*, *-es-* and sometimes *-e-*. For example:

der Stundenplan  
der Bärenhunger  
das Lebensmittel  
die Jahreszeit  
das Tagebuch

These connecting letters are often the plural ending of the first noun.

Verbs in compound nouns are often shortened. For example:

essen (verb) + Zimmer (noun) = das Esszimmer (sing.), die Esszimmer (pl.)  
wohnen (verb) + Zimmer (noun) = das Wohnzimmer (sing.), die Wohnzimmer (pl.)  
schlafen (verb) + Zimmer (noun) = das Schlafzimmer (sing.), die Schlafzimmer (pl.)

The last word in the compound, or chain, determines the gender of the compound noun. In the examples above, *Zimmer* is neuter, so the compound nouns are also neuter.

The last noun also determines the plural form of the compound noun, as shown in this example:

die Gäste (pl. noun) + das Haus (noun) = das Gästehaus (sing.), die Gästehäuser (pl.)

Keep a list of compound nouns and try to invent some of your own!

## Separable verbs

Make a list of the separable verbs in the cartoon story text. Highlight their prefixes and check that you can conjugate the verb correctly. For example:

### ankommen

**ankommen** → **an** is the prefix  
**kommen** is the verb (or verb stem)

ich komme an  
du kommst an  
er/sie/es kommt an  
wir kommen an  
ihr kommt an  
sie/Sie kommen an

## MACH MIT!

To revise separable verbs, write the prefixes on a set of cards and their matching infinitives on another set of cards and play a memory game. Depending on the verbs you are practising, you might have to include several cards of the same prefix. Some verbs may take more than one prefix.

Once you are confident matching the infinitives with the correct prefix, practise forming sentences with separable verbs. Work with a partner. Each person writes 5 to 10 complete sentences on individual pieces of paper. Leave enough space to cut the individual words apart afterwards. Give the cut pieces to your partner and ask them to rearrange the words into correct sentences. Discuss the sentences with your partner.



Sometimes, 'sch' and 'sk' make the same 'sh' sound in German.

**Schneemann, schneit** → 'sh' sound

**Ski fahren, Skilift** → 'sk' sound, but in some regions this can also be pronounced as 'sh'



## 1 Separable verbs

As you learnt in *Thema 5*, separable verbs consist of a prefix, a stem and an ending. Some common prefixes for separable verbs in German are *ab-*, *an-*, *auf-*, *aus-*, *ein-*, *her-*, *hin-*, *los-*, *mit-*, *nach-*, *vor-*, *weg-* and *zu-*. Here are a few examples of separable verbs from the cartoon story.

In einer Stunde **kommen** wir im Gästehaus **an**.  
 Ich **sauge** im Esszimmer **staub**.  
 Julia, **hilfst** du **mit**?  
 Um wie viel Uhr **stehen** wir **auf**?

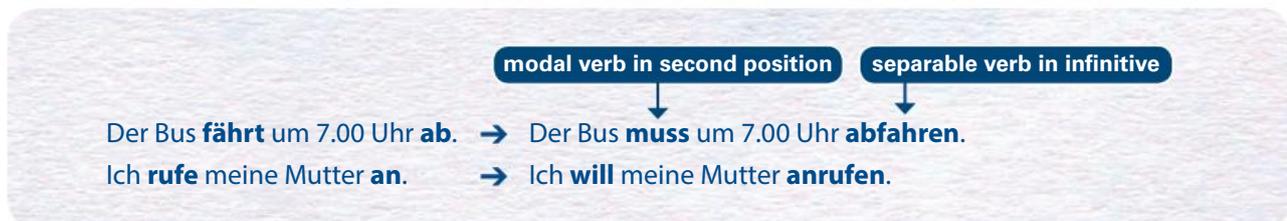
When using a separable verb in the present tense, the prefix is separated from the stem and put at the end of the sentence. The conjugated part of the verb (stem and pronoun ending) takes second position in the sentence.



	ankommen (to arrive)	abfahren (to depart)	anrufen (to call)
ich	komme ... an	fahre ... ab	rufe ... an
du	kommst ... an	fährst ... ab	rufst ... an
er/sie/es	kommt ... an	fährt ... ab	ruft ... an
wir	kommen ... an	fahren ... ab	rufen ... an
ihr	kommt ... an	fahrt ... ab	ruft ... an
sie/Sie	kommen ... an	fahren ... ab	rufen ... an

## 2 Separable verbs with modal verbs

If you use a separable verb in conjunction with a modal verb in a sentence, the modal verb becomes the conjugated verb and takes second position in the sentence. The separable verb is then used in its infinitive form and goes to the end of the sentence. Here are two examples:





## Where do we live?

der Bauernhof (‘e)	farm
der Vorort (en)	suburb
der Wohnblock (s)	block of flats or apartments
die Großstadt (‘e)	big city
die Innenstadt (‘e)	inner city
die Stadt (‘e)	city
die Stadtmitte (n)	city centre
die Wohngemeinschaft (en)	shared accommodation group
die Wohnung (en)	apartment, flat
das Dorf (‘er)	village
das Einfamilienhaus (‘er)	single-family house
das Fachwerkhaus (‘er)	traditional half-timbered house
das Gästehaus (‘er)	guesthouse
das Haus (‘er)	house, building
das Land (‘er) / auf dem Land	country, in the country

## In and around the house

der Balkon (s)	balcony
der Dachboden (‘)	attic
der Flur (en)	corridor, hallway
der Garten (‘)	garden
der Herd (e)	stove
der Keller (-)	cellar
der Kühlschrank (‘e)	fridge
der Müll (-)	rubbish
der Platz (‘e)	space
der Schrank (‘e)	cupboard
der Schrebergarten (‘)	community garden, allotment
der Schreibtisch (e)	desk
der Stock (e)	floor, storey
(im) ersten, zweiten, ... Stock	on the first, second, ... floor
der Tisch (e)	table
die Dusche (n)	shower
die Garage (n)	garage
die Küche (n)	kitchen
die Toilette (n)	toilet
die Treppe (n)	stairs
die Waschmaschine (n)	washing machine

das Arbeitszimmer (-)	workroom, study
das Bad(ezimmer) (-)	bathroom
das Bett (en)	bed
das Doppelstockbett / das Etagenbett	bunk bed
das Büro (s)	office
das Erdgeschoss (-)	ground floor
das Esszimmer (-)	dining room
das Kinderzimmer (-)	child's bedroom
das Schlafzimmer (-)	bedroom
das Sofa (s)	sofa
das Spielzimmer (-)	games room
das Spülbecken (-)	kitchen sink
das Stockwerk (e)	floor, storey
das Wohnzimmer (-)	living room

## Verbs

abfahren	to depart
abtrocknen	to dry (the dishes)
abwaschen	to wash (the dishes)
anrufen	to phone, to ring up
ankommen	to arrive
aufräumen	to tidy up
aufstehen	to get up (or stand up)
die Spülmaschine ausräumen	to unload the dishwasher
in Ordnung bringen	to tidy up
den Tisch decken	to set the table
die Spülmaschine einräumen	to load the dishwasher
fernsehen	to watch television
sich freuen auf (Ich freue mich auf ...)	to look forward to
mithelfen	to help
putzen	to clean
den Müll rausbringen	to take out the rubbish
staubsaugen	to vacuum
staubwischen	to dust
vorbereiten	to prepare

## Adjectives

bequem	comfortable
gemütlich	cosy, homey

# Bis bald!

In this unit, you will learn to:

- ☑ understand and give simple directions
- ☑ talk about leaving and seeing someone again
- ☑ give presents.

You will also learn about:

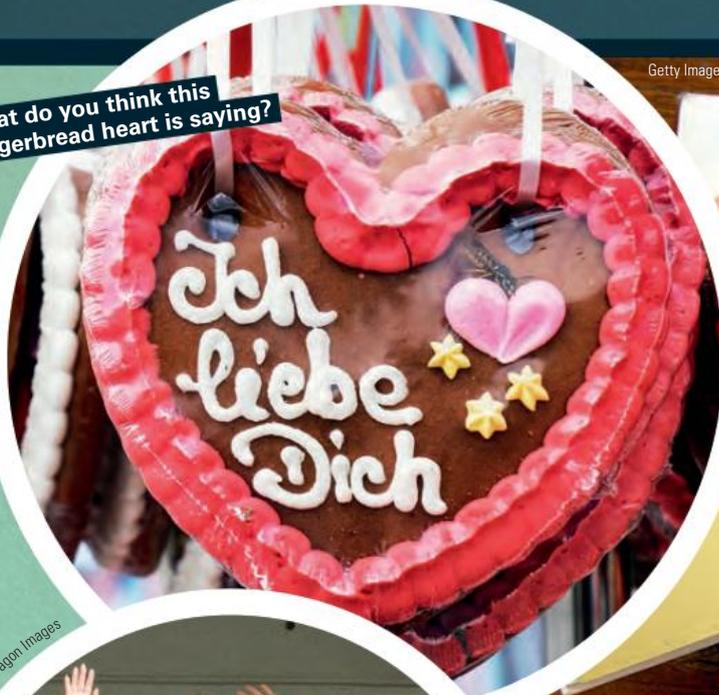
- ☑ souvenirs and keepsakes from German-speaking countries.

Saying goodbye to family and friends when they go on a trip is never easy, and we often express our emotions in a farewell message so our loved ones can be reminded of how much they mean to us. In the age of technology, a handwritten card signed by your friends can be a great keepsake, a gift to treasure. A text or message on social media can seem less special than something you can hold in your hand!

Germans like to write little poems or sayings on cards for friends when they are leaving. The poem on the right is a well-known farewell poem. It says that the author would only forget that person when rivers flow upwards, hares shoot hunters and mice eat cats! In other words, they will never forget that person. A poem like this is often found in a *Poesiealbum* – a scrapbook or friendship book filled with messages, verses, quotes, rhymes and pictures for the recipient, so they have a concrete reminder of their time with friends.



What do you think this gingerbread heart is saying?



Getty Images/ullstein bild



Ein Poesiealbum

Shutterstock.com/Dragon Images



In Australien haben wir viel Spaß gehabt!  
Have you had exchange students at your school?

Alamy Stock Photo/Goran Jakuš



Ein deutscher Fußball ist ein tolles Souvenir!

Many young people in German-speaking countries move to other cities after they finish secondary school, to further their studies. Not every town has a university; they're mainly located in larger cities.

Meine Universität ist in Heidelberg aber ich wohne in Bonn. Ich fahre jetzt nach Heidelberg! Tschüs Mama und Papa!



Alamy Stock Photo/Design Pics, Inc.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What souvenirs would you get for German exchange students who had been visiting your country? Why would you choose these?
- What would you miss about your country if you went on exchange?
- Do you have any sayings or poems, used as farewell messages, that are especially meaningful to you?
- What would be the advantages and disadvantages of moving to another city for further study? What do you think you would miss most about your home?
- How many ways of saying goodbye do you know in German?

## SOUVENIRS AUS DER DEUTSCHSPRACHIGEN WELT

It's always fun to buy souvenirs when you are travelling! Here are some popular items from German-speaking countries. Do you have any of these? Do you know which country or region they come from?



Kuhglocken



Lebkuchenherzen



Kuckucksuhr



Steiff Teddybären



Weihnachtsschmuck



Shutterstock.com/Jitchanant

Alamy Stock Photo/incamerastock

Alamy Stock Photo/Andriy Kravchenko

Shutterstock.com/DJab5

iStock.com/querbeet



Fußballtrikot



Bierkrüge



Gustav Klimt Socken



Mozartkugel



Ein Ampelmännchen

Alamy Stock Photo/TAR-TASS News Agency  
Shutterstock.com/Roman Traspolsky

Alamy Stock Photo/colbau  
Alamy Stock Photo/S. Popovic RM

PROJEKTE

**PROJEKT 1** Souvenirs

Create a digital presentation or poster on your research into souvenirs from German-speaking countries. For each of the souvenirs shown above, answer the following questions.

- Which German-speaking country is it from?
- What is the history and significance of the item?
- How much does it cost in euros or Swiss francs, and how much is this in your country's currency?
- Imagine you are buying these items for friends or family members. Write a sentence in German about what each person would receive and why. For example: *Meine kleine Schwester bekommt einen Steiff Teddybär. Sie findet Teddybären echt süß!*

**PROJEKT 2** Poesiealbum

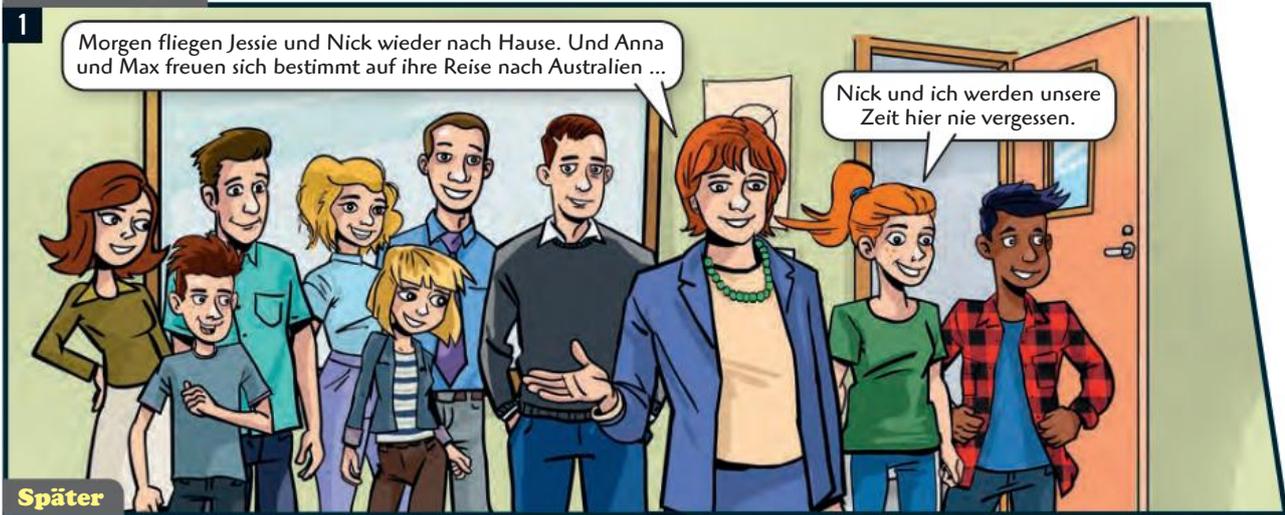
Create a German *Poesiealbum* for your friend! It can be digital or a small hardcover book. Include the following elements:

- photos and pictures of fun times together
- two to three German friendship rhymes (search online for *Poesiealbumsprüche*) or quotes
- three to five sentences in German about your friend. For example: *Du bist echt süß!*



Nick and Jessie are saying goodbye to the Germans before flying back to Australia.

## In der Schule



## Später



## Der letzte Tag

**WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?****True or false?**

- 1 Anna and Christian are looking forward to their trip to Australia.
- 2 Mr Lenz would like to travel to Australia.
- 3 Nick and Julia are travelling home.
- 4 Jessie doesn't have any presents for her family.
- 5 Nick has a boomerang for Boris.

## 1 Instructing people



Und jetzt machen wir ein Gruppenfoto. Jessie und Nick, **setzt euch vorne in die Mitte!** Christian und Sibel, **setzt euch nebeneinander.** Julia und Max **auf diese Seite** ... Ja, gut, und Anna, bitte **neben** Nick. Moment!



setz/stell dich ...	rechts	in die Mitte
setz/stell euch ...	links	auf diese Seite
	vorne	neben
	hinten	nebeneinander

### MACH MIT!

#### Let's take some photos!

Take different photos of your classmates. One person is the photographer and tells the others where to stand or sit. Who sits next to each other? Who sits at the front or back?

Take turns being the photographer and practising the vocabulary from the box. For example:

Marcus, stell dich hinten in die Mitte!

## 2 Saying goodbye



### DIALOGUE A

Mann, mein Koffer ist wahnsinnig schwer! Ich habe so viele Geschenke für meine Familie.

Ich habe **Strohsterne** für **meine Oma**, **einen Bierkrug** für **meinen Stiefvater** und **Gummibärchen** für **meine Geschwister**.



Was hast du da?

## DIALOGUE B

Ich kann es kaum glauben, am Samstag fährst du nach Hause.

Ich freue mich schon darauf. Es war eine sehr schöne Zeit.

Hast du Geschenke für deine Familie?

Ich habe auch ein Geschenk für dich.

Ja, bitte. Mach dein Geschenk auf!

Aber wir sehen uns doch wieder.

Ja, ich vergesse diese Zeit auch nie.

Ja, mein Koffer ist wahnsinnig schwer. Ich habe **einen Bierkrug** für **meinen Vater**, **eine Kerze** für **meine Mutter**, **Schokolade** und **CDs** für **meine Brüder** und **Gummibärchen** für **meine Deutschklasse**.

Für mich?

Was ist es? Ein Lebkuchenherz! Danke sehr!

**MACH MIT!****Pairwork**

- 1 Read the conversation between Anna and Nick aloud.
- 2 Create new conversations by using different words from the vocabulary lists below.

der Adventskranz (") / einen Adventskranz  
 der Bierkrug (") / einen Bierstein  
 der Strohstern (e) / einen Strohstern  
 der Kalender (-) / einen Kalender  
 der Weihnachtsschmuck  
 die Kuhglocke (n) / eine Kuhglocke  
 die Kerze (n) / eine Kerze  
 die Kuckucksuhr (en) / eine Kuckucksuhr  
 die Schokolade (-)  
 das Fußballtrikot (s) / ein Fußballtrikot  
 das Gummibärchen (-)  
 das Ampelmännchen Souvenir (s) /  
 ein Ampelmännchen Souvenir  
 das Poster (s) / ein Poster  
 das Lebkuchenherz (en) / ein Lebkuchenherz  
 das Parfüm (s) / ein Parfüm

der Bruder (") / für meinen Bruder  
 der Freund (e) / für meine Freunde  
 der Opa (s) / für meinen Opa  
 der Vater (") / für meinen Vater  
 die Mutter (") / für meine Mutter  
 die Oma (s) / für meine Oma  
 die Schwester (n) / für meine Schwester  
 die Deutschklasse (n) /  
 für meine Deutschklasse  
 die Freundin (nen) / für meine Freundin  
 die Geschwister (-) / für meine Geschwister

## What's the rule?

Personal pronouns are also used in their accusative form if they follow verbs such as *lieben, vergessen, haben, finden, tragen, mögen, fressen, essen, hören* and *reparieren*. Are the accusative case pronouns the **subject** or the **object** of the sentence?



## LET'S TRANSLATE!

Have a go at translating these sentences into English.

- *Ich mag dich.*
- *Der Wolpertinger frisst ihn!*
- *Sie repariert es.*
- *William findet mich süß!*

Now translate these sentences into German. Use the verb *lieben* (to love) and refer to the table of accusative case pronouns in the *Grammatik* section.

- I love her.
- You love me.
- We love you (plural).
- They love him.

## Reflexive verbs

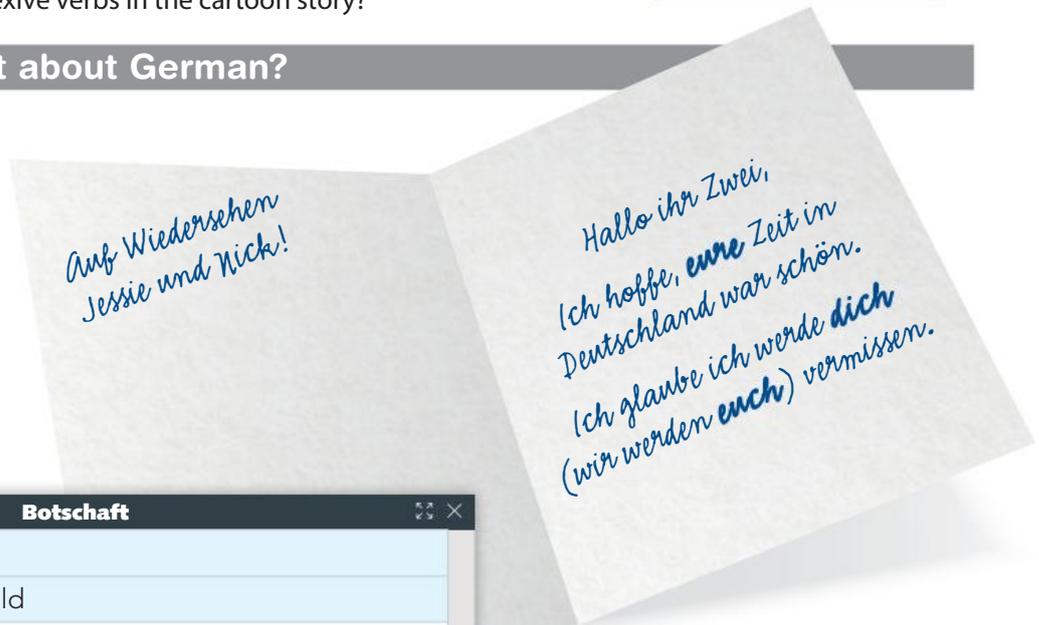
In the cartoon story, Anna says, *Ich freue mich schon darauf* ('I'm already looking forward to it') in response to Nick saying that they will see each other again. The verb *sich freuen* is a reflexive verb, because it teams up with a reflexive pronoun. Reflexive verbs 'reflect back on themselves', so to speak – examples in English are 'She hurt herself in the playground' and 'He should give himself a break!'

Can you find some reflexive verbs in the cartoon story?

Not all German reflexive verbs are reflexive in English. Don't forget the correct verb endings when conjugating!

## What's different about German?

For an informal letter, card or email, you write the personal pronouns and possessive adjectives in lower case.



**Botschaft**

**Von:** Klasse 9a  
**An:** Frau Berthold

Hannover, 20. Mai 2011

Liebe Frau Berthold,

Ich hoffe **Sie** haben eine schöne Zeit in Australien.

Wir werden **Sie** in der Schule vermissen.

**Ihre** Klasse 9a

senden

If you address a person formally in a letter, card or email, you must write the personal pronouns and possessive adjectives in upper case.

This differs from English, where all possessive adjectives and all personal pronouns except 'I' take lower case, unless they begin a sentence.

Hallo ihr Zwei,  
vielen Dank für eine tolle  
Zeit! Wir haben wirklich viel  
über Australien gelernt.  
Alles Gute und viele Grüße  
an eure Familien.  
Herr Lenz

Hi Australier,  
es ist schon komisch: ihr wohnt so weit  
weg, aber wir sind so gute Freunde. Das  
ist doch super! Hoffentlich kann ich euch  
bald besuchen. Vielen Dank, Nick, für  
das Kricketraining, aber ich spiele doch  
lieber Fußball. Ich werde euch texten. Ich  
habe ja eure Handynummern.  
Christian

Liebe Jessie (und Nick natürlich auch),  
ihr seid wirklich super. Ich freue mich schon  
wahnsinnig auf unsere Reise nach „Down Under“.  
Jessie, du bist einfach toll, und Nick, du bist ein Tier auf  
dem Snowboard. Gruß und Kuss. (Aber nur für Jessie!!  
Dich, Nick, mag ich nicht küssen!)  
Euer Max

He Nick (du Vielfraß) und Jessie, vielen Dank für das Interview für  
die Schülerzeitung. Ich kenne jetzt jede deutsche Wurstsorte.  
In Australien esse ich aber keine Schlange und auch keinen Koala!  
Wir sehen uns bald wieder!  
Alles Liebe von  
Anna

P.S. He Nick! Ich glaube, ich werde dich vermissen!

**LIEBE JESSIE, LIEBER NICK,  
WIR WERDEN EUCH VERMISSEN!**

Liebe Jessie und lieber Nick,  
ich hoffe, eure Zeit in  
Deutschland war schön. Beste  
Grüße und einen guten Flug  
zurück nach Australien!  
Frau Berthold

An Jessie und Nick,  
ich bin so traurig: morgen fliegt ihr schon ab.  
Ihr seid tolle Freunde! Ich habe ganz viele  
Fotos gemacht. Ich schicke sie in Briefen und  
Mails, O.K.? Habt einen guten Flug und  
vergesst uns nicht!  
Eure Sibel

Liebe Jessie und lieber Nick,  
Mensch, ich kann es gar nicht glauben, ihr  
bahnt morgen schon zurück nach Australien.  
Der lange Flug ist echt Wahnsinn!  
Ich denke morgen in Mathe an euch.  
Schreibt bitte ganz viele Mails!!!  
Küsschen,  
Julia

### WHAT HAVE YOU UNDERSTOOD?

- 1 Who said they learnt a lot about Australia?
  - 2 Who praises Nick for his skill on the snowboard?
  - 3 Who thanks Nick for the cricket training?
  - 4 Who thinks the long flight is really crazy?
  - 5 Who is very sad that Nick and Jessie will be flying out tomorrow?
  - 6 Why do you think German students might prefer playing soccer to playing cricket?
- Find evidence in the texts to justify your answers!

# Sprache und Kultur

## Auf Wiedersehen!

Did you know that *Auf Wiedersehen* literally means 'Until I see you again'? The English 'Goodbye' sounds so final in comparison, don't you think? Germans have a similar expression for when they finish a phone call: *Auf Wiederhören!* or *Wiederhören!* What do you think the literal translation of this expression would be?

In *Thema 1*, you learnt several ways to say farewell:

**Casual:** Tschüs! Tschau! Bis bald! Bis dann!

**Formal:** Auf Wiedersehen! Wiedersehen!

**Regional:** Servus!

As you know, Germans have formal and informal ways of greeting people and saying goodbye, and like to wish people well in a variety of circumstances. At the end of the working day, you will hear Germans wish their colleagues *Schönen Feierabend!*, meaning a 'nice end of work'.



## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What word(s) would you use to say goodbye to a doctor in Germany? What about to a close friend?
- Have you had exchange students at your school? If so, how did you farewell them?
- What activities are specific to the cultures represented in your class? Explain the origins of the activities and how they are culturally significant.
- How do you think people from other cultures would perceive these activities?

## So ist Deutsch!

Here are some more expressions you could use!

Schönes Wochenende!	(Have a nice weekend!)
Schönen Tag noch!	(Have a nice day!)
Mach's gut!	(Take care!)
Viel Glück!	(Good luck!)
Viel Spaß!	(Have fun!)
Pass auf Dich auf!	(Take care of yourself!)
Ich werde an Dich denken!	(I will think of you!)
Du wirst mir/uns fehlen!	(I/We will miss you!)
Vergiss mich nicht!	(Don't forget me!)

On what occasions would these cards be used?





## 1 Personal pronouns – nominative and accusative

Ist der Hut für **mich**?  
(Is the hat for **me**?)

Moritz hat Geburtstag. Wir haben ein Geschenk für **ihn**.  
(It's Moritz's birthday. We have a present for **him**.)

Ja, der Kuchen ist für **euch**.  
(Yes, the cake is for **you**.)

- The **subject** of a sentence is **the person or object directly affected by the action** (verb). It is the actor. The subject is always in the **nominative case**.
- The **object** of a sentence is **the person or object receiving the action** (verb). The direct object is always in the **accusative case**.

Personal pronouns (nominative)	Personal pronouns (accusative)	English pronouns
ich	mich	me
du	dich	you
er	ihn	him
sie	sie	her
es	es	it
wir	uns	us
ihr	euch	you
sie	sie	them
Sie	Sie	you (polite)

## 2 Reflexive pronouns



Personal pronouns (nominative)	Reflexive pronouns	Example
ich	mich	Ich freue mich auf Weihnachten.
du	dich	Du freust dich auf Ostern.
er	sich	Er freut sich auf die Party.
sie	sich	Sie freut sich auch auf die Party.
es	sich	Es freut sich auf ...
wir	uns	Wir freuen uns auf ...
ihr	euch	Ihr freut euch auf ...
sie	sich	Sie freuen sich auf ...
Sie	sich	Sie freuen sich auf ...

Some useful reflexive verbs:

**sich setzen**  
to sit (oneself) down

**sich freuen auf**  
to look forward to

**sich interessieren für**  
to be interested in

**sich treffen**  
to meet

Some reflexive verbs take certain prepositions, such as *auf* and *für*.

Ich freue mich **auf** die Reise Down Under! (I'm looking forward to the trip down under!)

### 3 Verb – vergessen



*Vergessen* is an irregular verb. Irregular verbs change the stem vowel in the second and third person singular.

Cara **vergisst** die Hausaufgaben.  
(Cara forgets her homework.)

Hoffentlich **vergesse** ich die Party am Samstag nicht!  
(Hopefully I will not forget the party on Saturday!)

	vergessen (to forget)
ich	vergesse
du	<b>vergisst</b>
er/sie/es	<b>vergisst</b>
wir	vergessen
ihr	vergesst
sie/Sie	vergessen

### 4 The imperative

There are three ways to give commands or requests in German:

- when you are talking to one person (*du*)

**Stell dich hier!**

- when you are talking to two or more people (*ihr*)

**Stellt euch hier!**

- when you are talking to someone older than you, using polite address (*Sie*).

**Stellen Sie sich hier, bitte!**

### 5 Preposition *für* + accusative

*Für* (for) is a preposition. A preposition indicates the relation of a noun or pronoun to another word. It usually comes before a noun or a pronoun. Prepositions cannot appear by themselves and they never change, but they often make the nouns or pronouns that follow them change. *Für* requires nouns or pronouns that follow it to take the accusative case.

Here is a table of the changes that happen to *der*, *die*, *das* and *die* after *für*:

	Maskulinum	Femininum	Neutrum	Plural
Nominativ	der Bruder	die Schwester	das Kind	die Eltern
für + Akkusativ	für <b>den</b> Bruder	für <b>die</b> Schwester	für <b>das</b> Kind	für <b>die</b> Eltern

You will notice that only the article of a masculine noun changes for the accusative. This can be tricky for English speakers to understand, because English nouns do not have genders and 'the' stays the same whether it is the subject (nominative) or direct object (accusative) of the sentence.

in English: **The** brother is here. I have a present for **the** brother.

*but*

in German: **Der** Bruder ist hier. Ich habe ein Geschenk für **den** Bruder.

Below are a few more examples of articles in the accusative case. Can you locate the subject and object in each sentence?

Hast du ein Geschenk **für den** Vater?

(Do you have a present for the father?)

Wir kaufen heute ein Kleid **für die** Mutter.

(We are going to buy a dress for the mother today.)

Das ist eine schöne Überraschung **für das** Kind.

(That is a beautiful surprise for the child.)

Die Schokolade ist **für die** Kinder.

(The chocolate is for the children.)



## Nouns

der Abschied (e)	departure, farewell
der Bierkrug (˘e)	beer mug
der Bumerang (s)	boomerang
der Kalender (-)	calender
der Koffer (-)	suitcase
der Strohstern (e)	straw star
der Teddybär (en)	teddy bear
die Kuckucksuhr (en)	cuckoo clock
die Reise (n)	trip
die Schokolade (n)	chocolate
die Seite (n)	page, side
das Fußballtrikot (s)	football jersey
das Gummibärchen (-)	gummy bear
das Lebkuchenherz (en)	gingerbread heart
das Parfüm (s)	perfume
das Poesiealbum (s)	friendship book
das Souvenir (s)	souvenir
das Trikot (s)	jersey

## Verbs

fotografieren	to photograph, to take a picture
glauben	to believe
vergessen	to forget
sitzen	to sit
werfen	to throw
sich setzen	to sit down
sich freuen auf	to look forward to
sich interessieren für	to be interested in
sich treffen	to meet

## Adjective

schwer	physically heavy
--------	------------------

## Adverbs

kaum	hardly, not many
so viele	so many
wahnsinnig	incredibly
wieder	again

## Personal pronouns (accusative)

für ...	for ...
mich	me
dich	you
ihn	him
sie	her
es	it
uns	us
euch	you
sie	them
Sie	you (formal)

## Commands and directions

Stell dich ...!	Stand ...! (singular)
Stellt euch ...!	Stand ...! (plural)
Setz dich ...!	Sit ...! (singular)
Setzt euch ...!	Sit ...! (plural)
auf diese Seite	on this side
hinten	behind
in die Mitte	in the middle
links	left
neben	next to
nebeneinander	next to each other
rechts	right
vorne	to/at the front

## Useful expressions

Aber sicher!	But of course!
Das wäre toll!	That would be great!
Mal sehen.	We'll see.
Moment!	Wait a moment!
Pass auf!	Watch out!
Spitze!	Excellent! Fantastic!
Ich freue mich schon darauf.	I am looking forward to it.
Er/Sie freut sich auf ...	He/She looks forward to ...
Ich vergesse diese Zeit nie.	I never forget this time.



## Feste und Feiertage

### Ostern

Many festivals in the German-speaking countries have their roots in religion. Apart from *Weihnachten* (Christmas), *Ostern* is the most important one. As well as the Christian tradition, it celebrates the beginning of spring. The German word *Ostern* comes from the name of the pagan Germanic goddess of dawn, spring and fertility, Oстера. Easter eggs symbolise fertility and new life.

There is a strong tradition among people in German-speaking countries to make their own Easter decorations. Many families hang blown-out and coloured eggs on branches from the garden, making an Easter tree.

The Easter bunny is also typical, either as a cake or made of chocolate.

A few weeks before Easter Sunday, you can find an Easter market or fair in many towns, called *Ostermarkt*. The Easter Fair in Vienna is held at the castle of Schönbrunn – apart from its many Easter specialties, it offers a very romantic backdrop.

On *Ostersonntag* (Easter Sunday), coloured hard-boiled eggs, as well as chocolate eggs and bunnies, are put into a basket and hidden in the house or garden for the children to find. Also very popular is a sweet cake for breakfast, called *Hefezopf*.



iStock.com/PeterHermesFurian

Der Osterbaum

### MACH MIT!

- Do you celebrate Easter? What similarities and differences are there between your celebrations and the German ones? Discuss these questions with a partner.
- See if you can find out how to blow out eggs.



### Karneval

Carnival, or *Karneval* in German, is celebrated in many countries all over the world. The word 'carnival' has its origin in Latin and means 'to remove meat'. It is the festival immediately before Lent, which for Catholics is a time of fasting and penitence, in preparation for Easter.

Carnival dates back to festivals celebrated by the Romans and ancient Egyptians, and is one of the most celebrated festivals in the German-speaking countries. People gather to eat, drink and be merry before the solemn days of Lent begin. In most Catholic areas, schools remain closed. In different regions of Germany it is also referred to as *Fastnacht*, *Fasching* or *Fasnet*.

The main events occur in February or early March, but the carnival season actually starts on 11 November at exactly 11.11 a.m. Little happens in November and December, as this time is devoted to Advent, the pre-Christmas period. Then it picks up again on 6 January (Epiphany). It ends at midnight on Shrove Tuesday in almost all regions, with the exception of some places in Switzerland. The next day, Ash Wednesday, is the beginning of Lent.

## Common traditions

The way carnival is celebrated varies from region to region, but there are common features. It typically involves a public celebration or parade. People wear masks and costumes, depicting grotesque characters. There is a general reversal of everyday rules and norms, and a high consumption of fatty food during carnival is common.

Across Germany, celebrations are organised by members of carnival clubs. Every year a prince and princess are chosen, who ride on a float at the parades on *Rosenmontag* or *Faschingsdienstag*, the two main days of celebration before Ash Wednesday. Locals in fancy costumes line the streets, waiting for the prince and princess to throw lollies into the crowds. Watching the parade, the public wave to the many marching bands and different groups walking past.



The carnival's prince throwing lollies from his float

Shutterstock.com/Thomas Durack

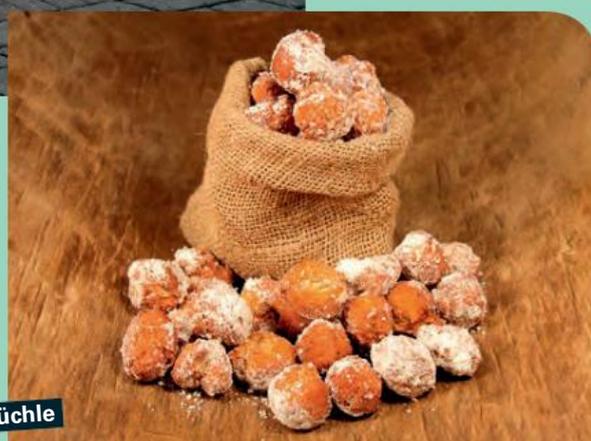


Funkenmariechen during the parade on Rose Monday

Alamy Stock Photo/dpa picture alliance

There is no parade without the *Funkenmariechen*. They are dance groups in special uniforms, who do acrobatic dancing in cheerleader style.

There are masked balls in public halls. Some people invite their friends and relatives to a private dress-up party and offer sugary food such as *Fasnetsküchle*, which is a tradition in Swabia, in the south-west of Germany.



Fasnetsküchle

Alamy Stock Photo/Zoamar GmbH



## Carnival in different regions

One of Germany's best known carnival celebrations takes place in the Rhineland in Cologne (*Köln* in German). The parade on *Rosenmontag* is the largest in Germany, stretching over 6 kilometres. It takes several hours for the parade to move through the streets of Cologne and hundreds of thousands of people celebrate during the festivities.



Celebrations in front of the *Dom*, the famous cathedral of Cologne



A typical scene of a carnival parade

Compared to the carnival in Cologne, the celebrations of south-western Germany, northern Bavaria, western Austria, German-speaking parts of Switzerland and Luxemburg are more of a pagan affair. Old traditions of driving out winter have mingled with the pre-Lent Catholic celebrations. People dress as spirits, demons and witches, wearing intricately carved, heavy wooden masks.

Representations of the 'wise fool' with his smooth, serene, pale face recur over and over.



Fools' faces of the Swabian-Alemannic carnival or *Fasnet*



A devil and a witch from the parade of the Swabian-Alemannic carnival

Costumes and masks in *Fastnacht* areas are worn year after year, often kept in a family for generations. However, *Fastnacht* has been influenced by other carnivals over time and a variety of costumes and customs are now included, as well as the more traditional ones.

The carnival of Basel is well known in Switzerland. Everything starts on the Monday after Ash Wednesday at exactly 4 a.m. – in total darkness with the so-called *Morgenstraich*. Pipers, drummers and carnival clubs start marching through the streets, carrying huge wooden and canvas lanterns with silhouettes symbolising events from the past year, while masked musicians, singers and actors wander in single groups through the alleyways. It ends on Thursday, again precisely at 4 a.m.

Each carnival celebration in the German-speaking world has its own typical cheers and shouts. *Helau!* or *Hellau!* is the most common greeting all over Germany. In Cologne, the most common cheer is *Kölle Alaaf!* ('Long live Cologne!'). In southern Germany, people shout *Narri! Narro!* There are many more carnival greetings in other regions.



Alamy Stock Photo/dipa picture alliance archive

Morgenstrach parade in Basel, Switzerland

**WHAT DO YOU THINK?**

Can you think of a festival in your area where you would find some similarities to the carnival parades?

**Volksfeste**

**OKTOBERFEST**

German-speaking countries seem to have innumerable non-religious celebrations, called *Volksfeste*, for nearly every occasion.

By definition, a *Volksfest* (people's festival) is a large event that usually combines a beer or wine festival and a funfair. Attractions may include amusement rides, games of chance and skill, and food and merchandise vendors.

The most famous one is the *Oktoberfest* in Munich. It actually starts at the end of September and runs over 2 weeks. The first festival was held in 1810 to celebrate the marriage of Crown Prince Ludwig of Bavaria to Princess Therese. To honour his bride, the meadow where the festival was held was named *Theresienwiese*. This *Oktoberfest* is now the biggest *Volksfest* in the world, with over 6 million visitors each year coming from many different countries to enjoy the fair with its *Bier* and *Würste*. Even some of the visiting tourists get dressed up in the traditional clothes of *Lederhosen* and *Dirndl* to join in the fun.



Oktoberfest in Munich





## Almabtrieb

In farming districts in Switzerland, Bavaria, Austria and in northern Tyrol, the end of summer means the return of the cattle from the high alpine pastures, the *Almen*, to lower valleys or village stables. Farmers dress in traditional costumes, and cows wear *Kuhglocken* (cow bells) around their necks and are decorated with flowers. The loud bells are designed to protect the animals from hostile demons and to bring them safely down into the valley.

There are tossing competitions, *Alphorn*-playing, traditional dancing and wrestling in some areas.



Der Almabtrieb, the return of the cattle from high alpine meadows

Shutterstock.com/FooTao



People playing the Alphorn

iStock.com/grabi



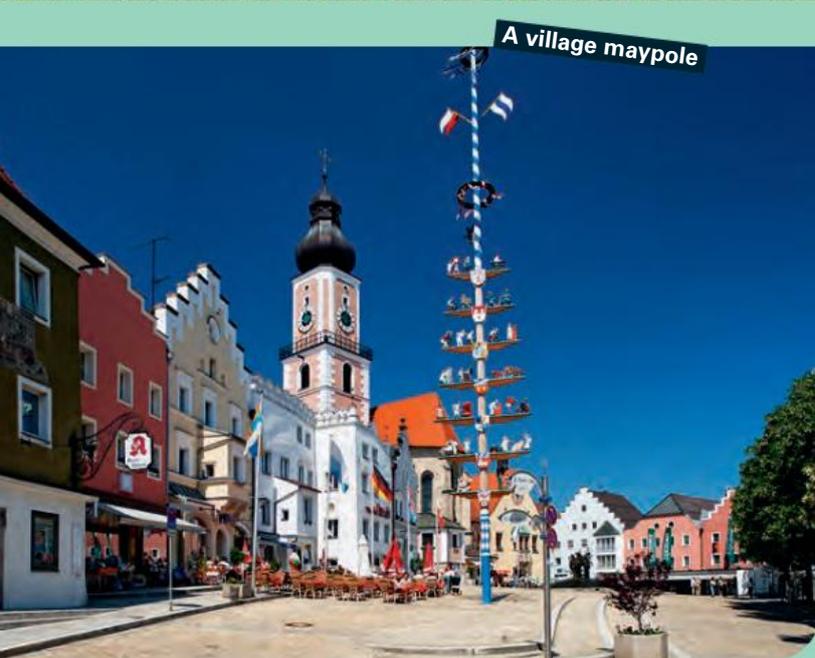
## Maibaum

The centuries-old custom of the *Maibaum* (maypole) still continues in many villages and still serves to welcome spring.

Traditionally, young men went into the forest to cut down a tall pine tree, which they would decorate and place in front of their sweetheart's home to impress them. Nowadays one tree is cut down per village. It is said to be guarded day and night in the week leading up to *1. Mai*, to prevent it being stolen by a neighbouring village. If it is stolen, the village has to pay a ransom in the form of food and beer. On 1 May, a party is held to celebrate the fruitfulness of the beginning of spring. Local folklore groups dressed in their traditional clothes dance around the *Maibaum*.

This tradition coincides with the celebration of *Tag der Arbeit*, when workers celebrate Labour Day on 1 May.

Alamy Stock Photo/ImageBROKER



A village maypole

## Salzburger Festspiele

Most of Austria's holidays centre around the country's long history in music. The most famous one is the *Salzburger Festspiele* (Salzburg Festival), which takes place between July and September in the famous city of Salzburg. It celebrates the life of Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, who was born there.



## National holidays

The third of October marks the *Tag der deutschen Einheit* (Day of German Unity). It celebrates the reunification of the former East Germany and West Germany, and was first celebrated in 1990. The day is celebrated nationally as a public holiday.

The *Schweizer Nationalfeiertag* or Swiss National Day is on 1 August and is celebrated with fireworks.

The *Österreichische Nationalfeiertag*, called Flag Day, commemorates the founding of the *Republik Österreich* in 1955 and is celebrated on 26 October.

Due to migration, German-speaking countries have become multicultural, with nationals from many other countries. Consequently, many more special festivals and holidays are celebrated.

### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What national holidays do you celebrate where you or your family come from? What is their significance and how are they celebrated?

## Feiernokabeln

der Almbetrieb (e)  
das Alphorn (er)  
der Faschingsdienstag (e)  
die Fasnet  
die Fasnetsküchle  
die Fastnacht

die Funkenmariechen  
der Hefezopf (e)  
der Karneval  
der Maibaum (e)  
der Morgenstraich  
das Oktoberfest (e)

der Osterbaum (e)  
der Ostermarkt (e)  
das Ostern  
der Ostersonntag (e)  
der Rosenmontag (e)  
das Volksfest (e)

# DEUTSCH-ENGLISCH WORTSCHATZ

## A

**der Abend (e)** evening  
**das Abendessen (n)** dinner  
**aber** but  
**ab|fahren** to depart  
**abgemacht!** that's settled!  
**aber sicher!** but of course!  
**der Abiball (¨e)** school formal, prom  
**die Abitur** final (school) exams  
**der Abschied (e)** farewell  
**die Abschiedskarte (n)** farewell card  
**abtrocknen** to dry (the dishes)  
**abwaschen** to wash (the dishes)  
**ach** oh  
**ach, da seid ihr ja!** oh, there you are!  
**ach du Schreck!** oh dear!  
**ach so!** I see!  
**acht** eight  
**der Adler (-)** eagle  
**die Adresse (n)** address  
**der Advent (e)** Advent (period leading up to Christmas)  
**der Adventskalender (-)** advent calendar  
**der Adventskranz (¨e)** Christmas wreath  
**das Adverb (ien)** adverb  
**aggressiv** aggressive  
**die Ahnung (en)** idea, suspicion  
**keine Ahnung!** no idea!  
**der Akkusativ (e)** accusative (case)  
**aktiv** active, energetic  
**alle** all, everybody  
**alles** all, everything  
**alles Gute!** all the best!  
**alles Gute zum Geburtstag!** best wishes on your birthday!  
**alles Liebe zum Geburtstag!** much love on your birthday!  
**die Alm (en)** alpine pastures  
**die Alpen** the Alps  
**das Alpenhorn (¨er)** alpine horn  
**als** as, than  
**alt** old  
**altmodisch** old-fashioned

**am** on; at  
**am besten** the best  
**am Computer** on the computer  
**am liebsten** the most  
**amerikanisch** American  
**an** to  
**ander** other  
**anders** else, different  
**der Anfang (¨e)** beginning  
**an|fangen** to begin  
**der Anfänger (-)** beginner  
**der Angeber (-)** show-off  
**die Angst (¨e)** fear  
**Angst haben (vor)** to be afraid (of)  
**an|kommen** to arrive  
**an|machen** to turn on  
**an|rufen** to call, to phone/ring up  
**die Antwort (en)** answer  
**antworten** to answer  
**die Anzeige (n)** advertisement; notice (in newspaper)  
**der Apfel (¨-)** apple  
**der Apfelkuchen (-)** apple cake  
**der Apfelsaft (¨e)** apple juice  
**der Apfelstrudel (-)** apple strudel  
**der April** April  
**arbeiten** to work  
**der Arbeiter (-)** worker (male)  
**die Arbeiterin (nen)** worker (female)  
**das Arbeitsbuch (¨er)** workbook  
**das Arbeitszimmer (-)** workroom, study  
**Argentinien** Argentina  
**die Armbanduhr (en)** wristwatch  
**die Art (en)** kind, type, sort  
**asiatisch** Asian  
**attraktiv** attractive  
**auch** also, too, as well  
**auf** in; on; to  
**auf Deutsch** in German  
**auf dem Schulhof** in the schoolyard  
**auf die Toilette** to the toilet  
**auf diese Seite** on this page, on this side  
**auf einen Blick** at a glance

## Abbreviations used:

*adj.* – adjective  
*adv.* – adverb  
*fem.* – feminine  
*gramm.* – grammar term  
*masc.* – masculine  
*neut.* – neuter  
*pl.* – plural  
*sing.* – singular

**auf Wiedersehen!** goodbye!  
**der Aufenthalt (e)** stay  
**auf|machen** to open  
**auf|passen** to look after, to pay attention  
**aufpassen, bitte!** pay attention, please!  
**aufräumen** to tidy up  
**der Aufschnitt (no pl.)** sliced cold meat  
**auf|stehen** to get up, to stand up  
**das Auge (n)** eye  
**der August** August  
**die Aula (Aulen)** assembly hall  
**aus** from  
**aus dem Haus** out of the house  
**aus der Schweiz** from Switzerland  
**aus Wien** from Vienna  
**der Ausdruck (¨e)** expression  
**der Ausflug (¨e)** excursion  
**ausgezeichnet** excellent  
**aus|machen** to turn off  
**austräumen** to clear out, to unload (the dishwasher)  
**aus|sehen** to look (like)  
**außerdem** besides  
**der Austauschpartner (-)** exchange partner (male)  
**die Austauschpartnerin (nen)** exchange partner (female)  
**der Austauschschüler (-)** exchange student (male)  
**die Austauschschülerin (nen)** exchange student (female)  
**Australien** Australia  
**der Australier (-)** Australian person (male)  
**die Australierin (nen)** Australian person (female)  
**australisch** Australian (adj.)  
**australischer Fußball** Australian Rules football  
**das Auto (s)** car  
**die Autobahn (-e)** freeway, motorway

## B

**das Baby (s)** baby  
**backen** to bake

**das Bad(ezimmer) (-)** bathroom  
**Badminton** badminton  
**der Bahnhof (‘e)** train station  
**bald** soon  
**der Balkon(s)** balcony  
**der Ball (‘e)** ball  
**der Balletttänzer (-)** ballet dancer (*male*)  
**die Balletttänzerin (nen)** ballet dancer (*female*)  
**die Banane (n)** banana  
**die Bandprobe (n)** band rehearsal  
**der Bär (en)** bear  
**der Bärenhunger** big appetite  
**Basketball** basketball  
**das Basketballtraining (s)** basketball training  
**basteln** to make (crafts)  
**bauen** to build  
**der Bauernhof (‘e)** farm  
**bay(e)risch** Bavarian (dialect)  
**beantworten** to answer  
**beginnen** to begin, to start  
**bei** at  
     **bei dir** at your place  
     **bei uns** at our place  
**beide** both  
**beißen** to bite  
**bekommen** to receive  
**das belegte Brot** sandwich  
**Belgien** Belgium  
**beliebt** popular  
**benutzen** to use  
**bequem** comfortable  
**der Berg (e)** mountain  
     **in den Bergen** in the mountains  
**der Berliner (-)** doughnut  
**berühmt** famous  
**beschreiben** to describe  
**besonders** especially  
**besser** better  
     **besser als ...** better than ...  
**beste Grüße** best wishes  
**bestimmt** definitely, for sure  
**besuchen** to visit  
**das Bett (en)** bed  
**der Bienenstich (e)** bee sting cake (*German cake*)  
**das Bier (e)** beer  
**der Bierkrug (‘e)** beer mug  
**bieten** to bid, to offer  
**das Bild (er)** picture  
**ich bin** I am (*from sein*)  
**die Biographie (n)** biography  
**Biologie (Bio)** Biology (Bio)

**die Birne (n)** pear  
**bis** until, till  
     **bis bald!** see you soon!  
     **bis jetzt** so far  
     **bis später!** see you later!  
**du bist** you are (*from sein*)  
**bitte** please; you're welcome  
     **bitte schön** here you are; you're welcome  
     **bitte schön?** can I help you?  
     **bitte sehr** you're welcome  
**bitterkalt** freezing cold  
**blau** blue  
**bleiben** to remain, to stay  
**der Bleistift (e)** (grey-lead) pencil  
**blitzen** to have lightning, to flash  
     **es blitzt** there's lightning  
**blöd** stupid  
**die Blume (n)** flower  
**die Bluse (n)** blouse  
**die Blutwurst (‘e)** blood sausage (black pudding)  
**die Bockwurst (‘e)** a type of sausage  
**die Bohne (n)** bean  
**der Bohneneintopf (‘e)** bean stew  
**Bolivien** Bolivia  
**das Boot (e)** boat  
**böse** angry, mad  
**das Boxen** boxing  
**das Brandenburger Tor** Brandenburg Gate  
**die Bratwurst (‘e)** bratwurst sausage  
**brauchen** to need  
**braun** brown  
**Brasilien** Brazil  
**die Brezel (n)** pretzel  
**der Brief (e)** letter  
**die Brille (n)** glasses (spectacles)  
**bringen** to bring  
     **in Ordnung bringen** to tidy up  
**das Brot (e)** bread  
**das Brötchen (-)** bread roll  
**der Bruder (‘-)** brother  
**brunchen** to have brunch  
**das Buch (‘er)** book  
**der Bumerang (‘e)** boomerang  
**das Bundesland (‘er)** (the German) state, land  
**die Bundesliga** national league (Germany)  
**bunt** colourful, multicoloured  
**der Buntstift (e)** coloured pencil  
**die Burg (en)** castle  
**das Büro (s)** office

**der Bus (se)** bus  
**der Busfahrer (-)** bus driver (*male*)  
**die Busfahrerin (nen)** bus driver (*female*)  
**die Butter** butter

**C**

**das Café (s)** café  
     **im Café** in/at the café  
**der Cent (s)** cent  
**chatten** to chat  
**die Checkliste (n)** checklist  
**Chemie** Chemistry  
**Chile** Chile  
**das Chinchilla (s)** chinchilla  
**Chinesisch** Chinese (language)  
**der Chor (‘e)** choir  
**die Chorleute (pl.)** choir members  
**die Chorprobe (n)** choir rehearsal  
**das Christkind (no pl.)** baby Jesus  
**die Cola (s)** cola  
**der Computer (-)** computer  
**das Computerspiel (e)** computer game  
**cool** cool  
**die Countrymusik** country music  
**der Cousin (s)** cousin (*male*)  
**die Cousine (n)** cousin (*female*)  
**die Currysoße (n)** curry sauce  
**die Currywurst (‘e)** sausage/bratwurst with curry sauce

**D**

**da** there  
     **da bin ich ja gespannt!** I can't wait!  
     **da drüben** over there  
     **da seid ihr ja!** there you are!  
**das Dach (‘er)** roof  
**der Dachboden (‘-)** attic  
**danke** thanks, thank you  
     **danke, gut** well, thanks  
     **danke schön!** thank you very much!  
**dann** then  
**darf ich ... ?** may I ...?  
**darüber** about, over that  
**das** the (*neut.*), that  
     **das ist ...** that is ...  
     **das kostet ...** that costs ...  
     **das macht ...** that comes to ...  
     **das schmeckt!** that tastes good!

**das wäre toll!** that would be great!  
**das wollen wir doch mal sehen** let's see  
**daß** that  
**das Datum (Daten)** date  
**dauern** to take (time)  
**dazu** in addition to that  
**(den Tisch) decken** to set the table  
**dein/deine/deinen** your (sing.)  
**die Dekoration (en)** decoration  
**dem** the  
**den** the  
**denken (an)** to think (about)  
**ich werde an Dich denken!** I will think of you!  
**denn** then, because  
**der** the  
**der Wievielte ist heute?** what date is it today?  
**der Designer (-)** designer (male)  
**die Designerin (nen)** designer (female)  
**Deutsch** German (language)  
**Deutscher Fußballbund (DFB)** German Soccer Federation  
**die Deutschklasse (n)** German class  
**Deutschland** Germany  
**deutschsprachig** German-speaking  
**der Dezember** December  
**der Dialog (e)** dialogue  
**dich** you, yourself  
**die** the  
**diese** these, this  
**der Dienstag (e)** Tuesday  
**digital** digital  
**der Dingo (s)** dingo  
**dir** you  
**direkt** directly  
**das Dirndlkleid (er)** dirndl (traditional German dress)  
**der DJ (s)** DJ  
**das Doppelstockbett (en)** bunk beds  
**der Döner Kebab (s)** doner kebab  
**der Donnerstag (e)** Thursday  
**der Download-Gutschein (e)** download voucher  
**doch!** but yes!, sure thing!  
**donnern** to thunder  
**doof** stupid  
**das Dorf (er)** village  
**dort** there

**draußen** outside  
**drei** three  
**drück die Daumen!** cross your fingers! (literally: press the thumbs!)  
**du** you (sing., informal)  
**du gehst mir auf die Nerven!** you are getting on my nerves!  
**du kannst** you can  
**du wirst mir/uns fehlen!** I/we will miss you!  
**dunkel** dark  
**dunkelblau** dark blue  
**dünn** thin  
**dürfen** to be allowed to  
**der Durst** thirst  
**Durst haben** to be thirsty  
**die Dusche (n)** shower

**E**

**echt** really  
**das Ei (er)** egg  
**das Eichhörnchen (-)** squirrel  
**eigen/eigene** own  
**ein/eine/einen** a, an, one (indefinite article)  
**ein bisschen** a bit, a little  
**einen guten Rutsch!** happy New Year!, have a good start to the new year!  
**einander** one another, each other  
**einfach** (adj.) easy, simple; (adv.) simply  
**einfach klasse** simply great  
**das Einfamilienhaus (er)** single-family house  
**eingeladen** invited  
**ein|kaufen** to shop  
**einkaufen gehen** to go shopping  
**die Einkaufsliste (n)** shopping list  
**das Einkaufszentrum (en)** shopping centre  
**die Einladung (en)** invitation  
**eins** one  
**ein|sammeln** to collect  
**das Einzelkind (er)** only child  
**das Eis** ice-cream  
**eisgekühlt** ice-cold  
**Eishockey** ice hockey  
**ekelhaft, eklig** disgusting, revolting  
**der Elefant (en)** elephant  
**elf** eleven  
**der Elf (en)** elf

**die Eltern (pl.)** parents  
**die E-Mail** email  
**der Emu (s)** emu  
**das Ende (s)** end  
**endlich** finally  
**der Engel (-)** angel  
**Englisch** English (language)  
**das Enkelkind (er)** grandchild  
**die Ente (n)** duck  
**entschuldigen, Sie!** (please) excuse me!  
**die Entschuldigung (en)** excuse, apology  
**Entschuldigung!** excuse me!, I'm sorry!  
**enttäuscht** disappointed  
**er** he  
**die Erde** earth  
**das Erdgeschoss (e)** first floor  
**Erdkunde** Geography (school subject)  
**das Erdmännchen (-)** meerkat  
**ergänzen** to complete  
**ergänze!** complete!  
**die Erklärung (en)** explanation  
**erlauben** to allow, to permit  
**der Esel (-)** donkey  
**erst** just, first  
**der/die Erste** the first  
**der Erste Weihnachtstag** Christmas Day  
**erstmal** first  
**es** it  
**es donnert und blitzt** there is thunder and lightning  
**es regnet** it is raining  
**es schneit** it is snowing  
**es tut mir Leid!** I'm sorry!  
**es gibt ...** there is ...  
**es gibt Gewitter** there is a thunderstorm  
**es ist ...** it is ...  
**es ist heiß** it is hot  
**es ist kalt** it is cold  
**es ist kühl** it is cool  
**es ist schön** it is fine  
**es ist sonnig** it is sunny  
**es ist stürmisch** it is stormy  
**es ist warm** it is warm  
**es ist windig** it is windy  
**es ist wolkig** it is cloudy  
**essen** to eat  
**das Essen (no pl.)** meal, food  
**der Esstisch (e)** dining table  
**das Esszimmer (-)** dining room  
**das Etagenbett (en)** bunk beds

**etwas** something  
**euch** you  
**euer/eure** your (*pl.*)  
**die Eule (n)** owl  
**der Euro (s)** euro  
**europäisch** European

## F

**das Fach (‘er)** subject  
**das Fachwerkhaus (‘er)**  
traditional half-timbered house  
**die Fähre (n)** ferry  
**fahren** to go (by car, train ...),  
to drive, to travel  
**das Fahrrad (‘er)** bicycle  
**die Fahrt (-)** journey  
**fair** fair  
**der Falke (n)** falcon  
**fallen** to fall  
**falsch** false, incorrect, wrong  
**falten** to fold  
**die Familie (n)** family  
**das Familienfoto (s)** family  
photo  
**der Familienname** surname  
**die Familienstammbaum (‘e)**  
family tree  
**fang sie sofort!** catch it straight  
away!  
**fantastisch** fantastic  
**die Farbe (n)** colour  
**fast** almost, nearly  
**faul** lazy  
**der Februar** February  
**die Feder (n)** feather  
**du wirst mir/uns fehlen!**  
I/we will miss you!  
**feiern** to celebrate  
**der Feiertag (e)** holiday  
**das Fell (e)** fur  
**das Femininum** feminine  
**das Fenster (-)** window  
**die Ferien** holidays  
**wie waren die Ferien?** how  
were the holidays?  
**fern|sehen** to watch television  
**fertig** ready, finished  
**das Fest (e)** celebration  
**die Festung (en)** fortress, castle  
**der Film (e)** film, movie  
**der Filmstar (s)** film star  
**finden** to find  
**die Firma (Firmen)** company,  
firm  
**der Fisch (e)** fish  
**das Fischfutter (-)** fish food

**flauschig** fluffy  
**das Fleisch (no pl.)** meat  
**die Fleischwurst (‘e)** pork  
sausage  
**fliegen** to fly  
**die Flosse (n)** fin  
**die Flöte (n)** flute  
**der Flügel (-)** wing  
**der Flug (‘e)** flight  
**der Flughafen (‘-)** airport  
**das Flugzeug (e)** aeroplane  
**der Flur (en)** corridor, hallway  
**der Fokus (se)** focus  
**das Foto (s)** photo  
**das Fotoalbum (Fotoalben)**  
photo album  
**der Fotograf (en)** photographer  
(*male*)  
**die Fotografin (nen)** photographer  
(*female*)  
**fotografieren** to photograph,  
to take a picture  
**die Frage (n)** question  
**das Frage- und Antwortspiel (en)**  
question-and-answer game  
**fragen** to ask  
**das Frankfurter Würstchen (-)**  
Frankfurter sausage  
**Frankreich** France  
**Französisch** French (language)  
**die Frau (en)** woman, wife  
**Frau ...** Mrs ..., Ms ..., Miss ...  
**Frau!** Miss!  
**das Frauchen (-)** pet owner  
(*female*)  
**frech** cheeky  
**frei** free  
**der Freitag (e)** Friday  
**die Fremdsprache (n)** foreign  
language  
**fressen** to eat (*used only for  
animals*)  
**(sich) freuen auf** to look forward  
to, to be happy  
**freut mich!** pleased to meet  
you!, I am pleased!  
**freut mich, euch**  
**kennenzulernen** it's a pleasure  
to meet you  
**er/sie freut sich auf ...** he/she  
looks forward to ...  
**ich freue mich auf ...** I look  
forward to ...  
**ich freue mich schon darauf!**  
I am already looking forward to  
it!  
**der Freund (e)** friend (*male*)

**die Freundin (nen)** friend (*female*)  
**freundlich** friendly  
**frieren** to freeze  
**frisch** fresh  
**frohe Ostern!** happy Easter!  
**frohe Weihnachten!** merry  
Christmas!  
**der Frosch (‘e)** frog  
**die Frucht (‘e)** fruit  
**früh** early  
**der Frühling (e)** spring  
**das Frühstück (e)** breakfast  
**frühstücken** to have breakfast  
**fünf** five  
**für** for  
**für mich** for me  
**Fußball** soccer  
**der Fußball (‘e)** soccer ball  
**das Fußballtraining (s)** football  
training  
**das Fußballtrikot (s)** soccer/  
football jersey  
**die Fußgängerzone (n)**  
pedestrian precinct  
**das Futter (-)** pet food  
**füttern** to feed (animals)

## G

**ganz** quite; whole  
**ganz genau!** exactly!, spot on!  
**gar nichts!** nothing!  
**die Garage (n)** garage  
**der Garten (‘-)** garden  
**der Gast (‘e)** guest  
**das Gästehaus (‘er)** guesthouse  
**die Gazelle (n)** antelope  
**das Gebäck (e)** cakes, biscuits  
**geben** to give  
**geblümt** floral  
**gebraten** fried  
**der Geburtstag (e)** birthday  
**das Geburtstagsgeschenk (e)**  
present  
**das Geburtstagskind (er)**  
birthday boy/girl  
**der Geburtstagskuchen (-)**  
birthday cake  
**die Geburtstagsparty (s)**  
birthday party  
**das Gedicht (e)** poem  
**gefährlich** dangerous  
**gefüllt** filled  
**das Gegenteil (e)** opposite  
**gehen** to go  
**gehen wir mal rein!** let's go in!  
**die Geige (n)** violin

**geil** cool  
**gelb** yellow  
**gekocht** cooked  
**gemein** mean  
**das Gemüse (-)** vegetables  
**gemütlich** cosy, homey  
**genau!** exactly!, spot on!  
**genau mein Typ!** just my type!  
**genauso** as ... as  
**genial!** excellent!, ingenious!  
**die Geographie** geography  
**der Gepard (en)** cheetah  
**gepunktet** spotted  
**gern** gladly, with pleasure  
**ich singe gern** I like to sing  
**ich spiele gern ...** I like to play ...  
**gern machen** to like doing (something)  
**das Geschäft (e)** business  
**das Geschenk (e)** present  
**Geschichte** History (school subject)  
**geschieden** divorced  
**geschmolzen** melted  
**die Geschwister (pl.)** brothers and sisters, siblings  
**das Gespräch (e)** conversation  
**gestern** yesterday  
**gestreift** striped  
**gesund** healthy  
**Gesundheit!** bless you!  
**das Getränk (e)** drink  
**getrennt** separated  
**gewinnen** to win  
**das Gewitter (-)** thunderstorm  
**gib mir ...** give me ...  
**giftig** poisonous, venomous  
**die Giraffe (n)** giraffe  
**die Gitarre (n)** guitar  
**glänzend** brilliant  
**das Glas (‘er)** glass  
**glauben** to believe  
**gleich** already, same, equal, just, immediately, now, at once, straight away  
**gleichfalls!** likewise!  
**das Glück** luck  
**Glück haben** to be lucky  
**glücklich** lucky  
**der Glückspilz** lucky beggar  
**Glückwünsche** best wishes  
**der Goldfisch (e)** goldfish  
**Golf** golf  
**Gott sei Dank!** thank goodness!  
**der Grad (e)** degree (temperature)  
**das Gras (‘er)** grass

**gratuliere!** congratulations!  
**grau** grey  
**Griechenland** Greece  
**griechisch** Greek (language)  
**grillen** to barbecue  
**die Grillparty (s)** barbecue  
**groß** big, large  
**zu groß** too big, too large  
**Großbritannien** United Kingdom  
**die Großeltern (pl.)** grandparents  
**die Großmutter (‘-)** grandmother  
**die Großstadt (‘e)** big city  
**der Großvater (‘-)** grandfather  
**grün** green  
**die Grundschule (n)** primary school  
**die Gruppenarbeit (en)** groupwork  
**das Gruppenfoto (s)** group photo  
**der Gruß (‘e)** greeting  
**grüß dich!** hello! (informal)  
**grüß Gott!** hello! (southern Germany, Austria)  
**guck(t) mal!** have a look!, look!  
**der Guglhupf (e)** German-style marble cake  
**das Gummibärchen (-)** gummy bear (German jelly baby)  
**gut** good, well  
**gut gemacht!** well done!  
**gut geschlafen?** (did you) sleep well?  
**gute Arbeit!** good work!  
**gute Besserung!** get well soon!  
**gute Idee!** good idea!  
**guten Appetit!** enjoy your meal!, bon appetit!  
**guten Morgen!** good morning!  
**guten Tag!** hello!  
**gutes neues Jahr und einen guten Rutsch!** happy new year!  
**der Gutschein (e)** voucher  
**das Gymnasium (Gymnasien)** advanced high school

## H

**haben** to have  
**habt ihr Durst?** are you thirsty?  
**der Hahn (‘e)** rooster  
**das Hähnchen (-)** chicken  
**halb** half  
**halb vier** half past four  
**der Halbbruder (‘-)** half-brother  
**die Halbschwester (n)** half-sister

**hallo!** hello!  
**Hals- und Beinbruch!** good luck!  
**die Halskette (n)** necklace  
**der Hamburger (-)** hamburger  
**der Hamster (-)** hamster  
**die Hand (‘e)** hand  
**Handball** (European) handball  
**das Handballtraining (s)** handball training  
**der Handschuh (e)** glove  
**das Handwerk** trade, craft  
**das Handy (s)** mobile phone  
**die Handynummer (n)** mobile phone number  
**harmlos** harmless  
**der Harz** mountain region in Germany  
**der Hase (n)** hare  
**hässlich** ugly  
**hast du Lust zu tanzen?** do you want to dance?  
**hau ab!** go away!  
**der Hauer (-)** tusk  
**das Hauptgericht (e)** main course  
**die Hauptschule (n)** general high school  
**das Haus (‘er)** house  
**im und um Haus** in and around the house  
**die Hausaufgabe (n)** homework  
**der Hausschuh (e)** slipper  
**das Haustier (e)** pet  
**der Haustiernamen (n)** pet name  
**die Haut (‘e)** skin  
**he** hey  
**he, ihr Zwei!** hey, you two!  
**Heavymetal** heavy metal (music)  
**das Heft (e)** exercise book  
**der Heiligabend; der Heilige Abend** Christmas Eve  
**das Heim (e)** home  
**das Heimweh** homesickness  
**Heimweh haben** to be homesick  
**heiß** hot  
**heißen** to be called  
**ich heiße ...** I am called ...  
**wie heißt du?** what is your name?  
**helfen** to help  
**hell** light  
**hellblau** light blue  
**das Hemd (en)** shirt  
**der Herbst (e)** autumn  
**der Herd (e)** stove

**der Herr (en)** man, gentleman  
**Herr ...** Mr ...  
**Herr!** Sir!  
**das Herrchen (-)** pet owner  
 (male)  
**herrlich** great, amazing,  
 wonderful  
**das Heu** hay  
**das Herz (en)** heart  
**herzliche Grüße** best wishes  
**herzlichen Glückwunsch!**  
 congratulations!  
**herzlichen Glückwunsch zum  
 Geburtstag!** happy birthday!  
**heute** today  
**heute ist der ... (Datum)** today  
 is the ... (date)  
**heute Abend** tonight  
**die Hexe (n)** witch  
**hi!** hi!  
**hier** here  
**die Hilfe** (no pl.) help  
**der Himmel (-)** sky, heaven  
**hinab** down  
**hinten** of the back, behind  
**Hip-Hop** Hip Hop (music)  
**die Hitparade (n)** hit parade  
**Hochdeutsch** 'high' or standard  
 German  
**der Hochzeitstag (e)** wedding  
 anniversary  
**hoch soll er/sie leben!**  
 hip, hip, hooray!  
**Hockey** hockey  
**hoffen** to hope  
**hoffentlich** hopefully  
**holen** to get  
**die Hölle (n)** hell  
**der Honig (e)** honey  
**hören** to listen to, to hear  
**hör mal/zu!** listen!  
**das Horn (er)** horn  
**die Hose (n)** pants, trousers  
**der Huf (e)** hoof  
**das Huhn (er)** chicken  
**der Hund (e)** dog  
**das Hündchen (-)** puppy, little  
 dog, doggy  
**die Hündin (nen)** female dog  
**die Hundefreunde** dog lovers (pl.)  
**hundert** hundred  
**der Hunger** hunger, appetite  
**Hunger haben** to be hungry  
**hurra!** hooray!  
**der Hut (e)** hat

## I

**der IC/ICE (-)** Intercity/Intercity-  
 Express train  
**ich** I  
**ich aber schon!** I do though!  
**ich auch** me too  
**ich bin ...** I am ...;  
 my name is ...  
**ich bin fertig** I am finished  
**ich bin ... Jahre alt** I am ...  
 years old  
**ich bin schon gespannt** I can't  
 wait  
**ich freue mich auf** I am  
 looking forward to ...  
**ich höre Musik** I listen to  
 music  
**ich kann ...** I can ...  
**ich komme aus ...** I come  
 from ...  
**ich mache ...** I do ...  
**ich nicht!** I don't!, not me!  
**ich singe im Chor** I sing in a  
 choir  
**ich weiß (es) nicht** I don't  
 know  
**ich werde an Dich denken!**  
 I will think of you!  
**ideal** ideal  
**die Idee (n)** idea  
**igitt!** yuck! ugh!  
**ihn** him, it  
**ihr** you (pl.)  
**ihr/ihre/ihren** her  
**Ihr/Ihre/Ihren** their, your (formal)  
**iiiihh!** eek!  
**im** in (the)  
**im Arm** in one's arms  
**im Café** in the café  
**im Chor** in the choir  
**im Ernst?** seriously?  
**im Fernsehen** on television  
**im Internet** on the internet  
**im Ordner** in the folder  
**im Trend** in fashion  
**im und um Haus** in and  
 around the house  
**im Vergleich** in comparison  
**im Zug** in the train  
**der Imbiss (e)** snack  
**die Imbissbude (n)** snack stand,  
 snack stall  
**immer** always  
**immer noch** still  
**in** in, into  
**in der Hand** in the/one's hand

**in die Mitte** in the middle  
**in Ordnung** all right, OK  
**Indonesisch** Indonesian  
 (language)  
**Informatik** Information  
 Technology (IT) (school subject)  
**die Information (en)** information  
**informieren** to inform  
**der Ingenieur (e)** engineer  
 (male)  
**die Ingenieurin (nen)** engineer  
 (female)  
**die Innenstadt (e)** inner city  
**ins Kino** in/to the cinema  
**das Insekt (en)** insect  
**die Insel (n)** island  
**das Instrument (e)** instrument  
**intelligent** intelligent  
**interessant** interesting  
**sich interessieren für** to be  
 interested in  
**international** international  
**das Internet** (no pl.) the internet  
**das Interview (s)** interview  
**interviewen** to interview  
**Israel** Israel  
**ist** is (from sein)  
**Italien** Italy  
**italienisch** Italian (adj.)  
**Italienisch** Italian (language)

## J

**ja** yes  
**ja, bitte?** can I help you?  
**ja, gerne** yes, gladly; with  
 pleasure  
**ja, stimmt** yes, that's true  
**ja, und wie!** yes, absolutely!  
**die Jacke (n)** jacket  
**der Jaguar (e)** jaguar  
**das Jahr (e)** year  
**... Jahre alt** ... years old  
**die Jahreszeit (en)** season  
**der Januar** January  
**japanisch** Japanese (adj.)  
**Japanisch** Japanese (language)  
**Jazz** Jazz (music)  
**die Jeans** (pl.) jeans  
**jede** every  
**jetzt** now  
**der Job (s)** job (informal)  
**joggen** to jog  
**Joggen** jogging  
**der Joghurt (s)** yoghurt  
**der Journalist (en)** journalist  
 (male)

**die Journalistin (nen)** journalist  
(female)  
**Judo** judo  
**das Jugendgästehaus (‘er)** youth  
guesthouse  
**die Jugendherberge (n)** youth  
hostel  
**jung** young  
**der Junge (n)** boy  
**die Jungs** boys, guys (informal)  
**der Juni** June  
**der Juli** July

## K

**der Kaffee (s)** coffee  
**der Käfig (e)** cage  
**der Kakao (s)** hot chocolate,  
cocoa  
**der Kalender (-)** calendar  
**kalt** cold  
**Kanada** Canada  
**der Kanarienvogel (‘-)** canary  
**das Känguru (s)** kangaroo  
**das Kaninchen (-)** rabbit  
**du kannst** you can (from können)  
**kaputt** broken, exhausted  
**Karate** karate  
**kariert** checked  
**Karneval** carnival  
**das Karnevalskostüm (e)**  
carnival costume  
**die Karotte (n)** carrot  
**die Karte (n)** greeting card, map,  
ticket  
**die Kartoffel (n)** potato  
**der Kartoffelpuffer (-)** potato  
cake  
**der Kartoffelsalat (e)** potato  
salad  
**der Käse (-)** cheese  
**das Käsebrod (e)** cheese  
sandwich  
**das Käsefondue (s)** cheese  
fondue  
**der Käsekuchen (-)** cheesecake  
**der Kater (-)** male cat  
**das Kätzchen (-)** kitten  
**die Katze (n)** cat  
**das Katzenfutter (-)** cat food  
**kaufen** to buy  
**kaum** hardly  
**die Kehrwoche (n)** week of  
cleaning duties (in a block of  
flats)  
**kein/keine/keinen** no, no one,  
none, not any (indefinite article)  
**kein Problem!** no problem!

**keine Ahnung!** no idea!  
**keine Panik!** don't panic!  
**der Keller (-)** cellar  
**kennen** to know  
**die Kerze (n)** candle  
**der Ketchup** ketchup  
**das Kind (er)** child  
**der Kindergarten (‘-)**  
kindergarten  
**das Kinderzimmer (-)** child's  
bedroom  
**das Kino (s)** cinema  
**die Kirsche (n)** cherry  
**die Klamotten (pl.)** clothes  
(colloquial)  
**klar** clear  
**klar!** sure!  
**die Klarinette (n)** clarinet  
**klasse** great  
**die Klasse (n)** class  
**die Klassenaktivität (-)** class  
activity  
**die Klassenarbeit (en)** class test  
**die Klassenfahrt (en)** excursion,  
class trip  
**das Klassenfest (e)** class party  
**das Klassenfoto (s)** class photo  
**der Klassenkamerad** classmate  
**der Klassenlehrer (-)** class  
teacher (male)  
**die Klassenlehrerin (nen)** class  
teacher (female)  
**das Klassenprojekt (e)** class  
project  
**das Klassenzimmer (-)**  
classroom  
**klassische Musik** classical  
music  
**die Klaue (n)** claw  
**das Klavier (e)** piano  
**kleben** to stick  
**der Klebstoff (e)** glue  
**das Kleid (er)** dress  
**die Kleidung** clothes  
**klein** small, little  
**zu klein** too small, too little  
**die Knackwurst (‘e)** knackwurst  
(type of sausage)  
**knapp** almost, scarcely  
**das Knie (-)** knee  
**knuddelig** cuddly  
**der Koala (s)** koala  
**das Kochbuch (‘er)** cookbook  
**der Kode (s)** code  
**der Koffer (-)** suitcase  
**die Kombination (en)**  
combination

**komisch** strange  
**das Komma (s)** comma  
**der Kommentar (e)**  
commentary  
**kommen** to come  
**komm!** come on!  
**komm mal rein!** come on in!  
**komm(t) an die Tafel!** come to  
the board!  
**kommt ihr mit?** are you  
coming, too?; do you want to  
come?  
**kompliziert** complicated  
**die Konditorei (en)** cake shop  
**können** to be able to  
(modal verb); can  
**sich konzentrieren**  
to concentrate (reflexive verb)  
**ich konzentriere mich**  
I'm concentrating  
**das Konzert (e)** concert  
**der Kopf (‘e)** head  
**der Kopfschmerz (en)** headache  
**Korbball** netball  
**kosten** to cost  
**was kostet/kosten ...?**  
how much does ... cost?  
**der Krach (‘e)** noise  
**die Krakauer** ham sausage  
**die Kralle (n)** claw  
**krank** sick  
**das Kreuzworträtsel (-)**  
crossword puzzle  
**Kricket** cricket  
**das Krokodil (e)** crocodile  
**die Küche (n)** kitchen  
**der Kuchen (-)** cake  
**die Kuckucksuhr (en)** cuckoo  
clock  
**die Kugel (n)** bauble  
**die Kuh (‘e)** cow  
**die Kuhglocke (n)** cow bell  
**kühl** chilly, cool (weather)  
**der Kuli (s)** (ballpoint) pen  
**der Kühlschrank (‘e)** fridge  
**Kunst** Art (school subject)  
**das Kunstmuseum (en)** art  
gallery  
**das Kursbuch (‘er)** textbook  
**kurz** short  
**kuschelig** cuddly  
**der Kuß (Küsse)** kiss  
**das Kuschtier (e)** soft toy  
**küssen** to kiss

## L

**die Lampe (n)** lamp  
**das Land (‘er)** country  
     **auf dem Land** in the country  
**landen** to land  
**lang** long  
**langsam** slow, slowly  
**langweilig** boring  
**der Lastkraftwagen (LKW) (-)**  
     truck, heavy goods vehicle  
**Latein** Latin (language)  
**laufen** to run  
**laut** loud  
**die Lebensmittel (pl.)** groceries  
**die Leberwurst (‘e)** liverwurst  
**der Lebkuchen (-)** gingerbread  
**das Lebkuchenherz (en)**  
     gingerbread heart  
**lecker** delicious  
     **lecker!** yum!  
**die Lederhose (n)** lederhosen  
     (traditional German leather shorts)  
**die Lederjacke (n)** leather jacket  
**der Lehrer (-)** teacher (*male*)  
**die Lehrerin (nen)** teacher  
     (*female*)  
**das Lehrerhandbuch (‘er)**  
     teacher book  
**leicht** easy, easily  
**leider** unfortunately  
**der Leopard (n)** leopard  
**lernen** to learn  
**Lerntipps** learning tips  
**lesen** to read  
**die Leseseite (n)** reading page  
**letzt** last  
     **der/die Letzte** the last  
**die Leute (pl.)** people  
**libanesisch** Lebanese  
**das Licht (er)** light  
**lieb** kind, nice  
     **liebe GrüÙe** kind regards, best wishes  
     **liebe Anna** dear Anna  
     **lieber Christian** dear Christian  
**(jemanden) lieb haben** to be fond of (someone)  
**lieben** to love  
**lieber** rather  
     **lieber als ...** rather than ..., in preference to ...  
**der Liebesfilm (e)** romantic movie  
**das Lieblingsbuch (‘er)** favourite book

**das Lieblingsessen (-)** favourite meal  
**das Lieblingsfach (‘er)** favourite subject  
**die Lieblingsfarbe (n)** favourite colour  
**der Lieblingskuchen (-)**  
     favourite cake  
**die Lieblingsmannschaft (n)**  
     favourite team  
**der Lieblingstag (e)** favourite day  
**am liebsten** best, the most  
**Liechtenstein** Liechtenstein  
**das Lied (er)** song  
**lila** purple  
**die Limonade (n)** lemonade  
**das Lineal (e)** ruler  
**links** left  
**los|fahren** to set off  
**der Löwe (n)** lion  
**die Luftfahrt (en)** air travel  
**lunchen** to have lunch  
**lustig** funny  
**der Luftballon (s)** balloon  
**Luxemburg** Luxembourg

## M

**machen** to do, to make  
     **mach(t) das Licht an/aus!** turn the light on/off!  
     **mach(t) die Tafel sauber!** clean the board!  
     **mach(t) die Tür auf/zu!** open/close the door!  
     **mach(t) eure Bücher auf/zu!** open/close your books!  
     **mach mit!** join in!  
     **mach(t) schnell!** hurry up!  
     **mach’s gut!** take care!  
**das Mädchen (-)** girl  
**Mahlzeit!** enjoy your meal! (*formal*)  
**der Mai** May  
**der Maibaum (‘e)** maypole  
**die Mail (s)** email  
**der Maiskolben (-)** corn on the cob  
**die Majonäse** mayonnaise  
**mal sehen** we’ll see  
**die Mama (s)** mum  
**die Mami (s)** mummy  
**man** one, you  
**manchmal** sometimes  
**der Mann (‘er)** man, husband  
     **oh Mann!** oh man!  
**das Männchen (-)** male animal  
**der Mantel (‘-)** coat

**des Mäppchen (-)** pencil case  
**markieren** to mark  
**der Marktplatz (ë)** market place  
**die Marmelade (n)** jam, marmalade  
**der Marmorkuchen (n)** marble cake  
**der März** March  
**das Maskulinum** masculine  
**Mathe(matik)** Maths  
**die Maus (‘e)** mouse  
**das Mäuschen (-)** little mouse  
**das Meer (e)** the sea  
     **am Meer** by the sea  
**das Meerschweinchen (-)** guinea pig  
**mehr** more  
**mein/meine/meinen** my  
     **mein Geburtstag ist in (Monat)/am (Tag/Datum)** my birthday is in (month)/on (day/date)  
**meistens** mostly, most of the time  
**melde dich! / meldet euch!** put your hand(s) up!  
**Mensch!** gee!  
     **Mensch, bin ich kaputt!** gee, I’m exhausted!  
**der Meter (-)** metre  
**die Mettwurst (‘e)** (smoked) pork/beef sausage  
**mexikanisch** Mexican  
**mich** me, myself  
**die Milch** milk  
**das Mineralwasser** mineral water  
**minus** minus  
**die Minute (n)** minute  
**mir geht’s gut** I’m well  
**miserabel** miserable, unhappy  
**mit** with, by  
     **mit dem Bus** by bus  
**mit|bringen** to bring (along)  
**mit|helfen** to help  
**mit|kommen** to come with, to come too  
**der Mittag (e)** midday  
**das Mittagessen (-)** lunch  
**die Mitte (n)** middle  
**die Mitternacht (‘e)** midnight  
**der Mittwoch (-)** Wednesday  
**möchte** would like (form of mögen)  
     **möchtest du gern tanzen?** would you like to dance?  
**das Modalverb (en)** modal verb

**die Modenschau (en)** fashion parade  
**modern** modern  
**mogeln** to cheat  
**mögen** to like  
**der Mohnkuchen (-)** poppy seed cake  
**die Möhre (n)** carrot  
**moin!** hello! (*northern Germany*)  
**Moment!** wait a moment!  
**der Monat (e)** month  
**der Montag (e)** Monday  
**der Morgen (-)** morning  
**Morgen!** morning!, hi!  
**morgen** tomorrow  
**morgens** in the morning  
**das Motorrad (‘er)** motorbike  
**müde** tired  
**der Müll (-)** rubbish  
**den Müll rausbringen** to take out the rubbish  
**München** Munich  
**die Muschelkette (n)** shell necklace  
**das Museum (en)** museum  
**Musik** Music (school subject)  
**die Musik (en)** music  
**die Musikarte (n)** type of music  
**das Müsli (s)** muesli  
**müssen** to have to (*modal verb*); must  
**das Muster (-)** pattern  
**die Mutprobe (n)** test of courage  
**die Mutter (‘-)** mother  
**die Mütze (n)** beanie, hat

## N

**na** hey, well  
**na, los!** come on!, let’s go!  
**na, und?** so what?  
**na, komm mal rein!** come on in!  
**nach** to, towards, past (time), after  
 ... **nach ...** ... past/after (the hour) ...  
**nach Hause** (to go) home  
**nachher** afterwards  
**der Nachmittag (e)** afternoon  
**nachmittags** in the afternoon  
**die Nachspeise (n)** dessert  
**nächst** next  
**die Nacht (‘e)** night  
**nachträglich** belated  
**der Name (n)** name  
**das Nashorn (‘er)** rhinoceros  
**natürlich** naturally

**Naturwissenschaft (en)** Science (school subject)  
**ne?** isn’t it?  
**neben** next to  
**nebeneinander** next to each other  
**neblig** foggy  
**der Neffe (n)** nephew  
**nehmen** to take, to have  
**nein** no  
**nett** nice  
**neu** new  
**neun** nine  
**das Neutrum** neuter  
**Neuseeland** New Zealand  
**nicht** not  
**ich singe nicht gern** I dislike singing  
**nicht gern machen** to dislike doing (something)  
**nicht mehr** no longer  
**nicht so gut** not so good  
**nicht unbedingt** not necessarily  
**nicht wahr?** isn’t that true?  
**der Nichte (n)** niece  
**nichts** nothing  
**nichts Besonderes** nothing much  
**nie** never  
**die Niederlande** the Netherlands  
**niedlich** cute  
**der Nikolaus (‘e)** Saint Nicholas  
**der Nikolausstiefel (-)** Christmas stocking  
**das Nilpferd (e)** hippopotamus  
**nimmer** never  
**nimmermehr** never again  
**noch** still  
**noch einmal** once again  
**noch nicht** not yet  
**das Nomen (-)** noun  
**das Nordamerika** North America  
**Norwegen** Norway  
**die Note (n)** grade, score  
**die Notiz (en)** note  
**der Notizblock (‘e)** notepad  
**der November** November  
**die Nudel (n)** pasta, noodle  
**null** zero  
**die Nummer (n)** number  
**nun** now  
**nun hört aber auf!** now stop that!  
**nur** only  
**der Nussknacker (-)** nutcracker

## O

**ob** whether  
**das Obst (no pl.)** fruit  
**der Obstsalat (e)** fruit salad  
**oder** or  
**oder?** isn’t it/that so?  
**oft** often  
**oh** oh  
**oh Gott!** oh my god!  
**oh weh!** oh dear!  
**oh weia!** oh dear!  
**ohne** without  
**das Ohr (en)** ear  
**der Ohrring (e)** earring  
**die Olympischen Spiele** Olympic Games  
**O.K.** OK, all right  
**der Oktober** October  
**das Oktoberfest (e)** Oktoberfest  
**die Oma (s)** grandma  
**die Omi (s)** granny  
**der Onkel (-)** uncle  
**der Opa (s)** grandpa  
**der Opal (e)** opal  
**der Opi (s)** grandpa, pop  
**die Orange (n)** orange (*fruit*)  
**orange** orange  
**der Orangensaft (‘e)** orange juice  
**organisieren** to organise  
**der Osterhase (n)** Easter bunny  
**das Ostern** Easter  
**Österreich** Austria  
**der Ostersonntag** Easter Sunday  
**ostfriesisch** East Frisian  
**der Otter (-)** otter  
**der Ozean (e)** ocean

## P

**das Paar (e)** pair  
**der Panter (-)** panther  
**die Pampelmuse (n)** grapefruit  
**der Papa (s)** dad  
**der Papagei (en)** parrot  
**der Papi (s)** daddy  
**das Papier** paper  
**Paraguay** Paraguay  
**das Parfüm (s)** perfume  
**der Park (s)** park  
**parken** to park  
**der Partner (-)** partner (*male*)  
**die Partnerarbeit (en)** work with a partner  
**die Partnerin (nen)** partner (*female*)

**die Party (s)** party  
**zu einer Party gehen** to go to a party  
**pass(t) auf!** pay attention!, watch out!  
**pass auf Dich auf!** take care of yourself!  
**die Pause (n)** recess  
**perfekt** perfect  
**die Person (en)** person  
**der Pfeffer** pepper  
**das Pferd (e)** horse  
**die Pfote (n)** paw  
**pfui!** yuck!, ugh!  
**Physik** physics  
**die Piste (n)** ski slope  
**die Pizza (s)** Pizza  
**planen** to plan  
**der Platten (-)** flat tyre  
**der Platz (‘e)** space  
**das Plätzchen (-)** biscuit  
**der Plural** plural  
**plus** plus  
**das Poesiealbum (-alben)** friendship book  
**Polen** Poland  
**die Polizei** police  
**die Pommes (pl.)** hot chips, french fries  
**die Popmusik** pop music  
**populär** popular  
**die Portion (en)** portion, serve  
**die Post** mail, post  
**das Poster (-)** poster  
**die Postkarte (n)** postcard  
**die Praline (n)** chocolate  
**die Präposition (en)** preposition  
**präsentieren** to present  
**prima** great  
**das Privatleben (-)** private life  
**pro** per  
**pro Stück** per piece  
**probieren** to try  
**probier doch mal!** try/have some!  
**das Produkt (e)** product  
**der Profi (s)** professional  
**das Profil (e)** profile  
**das Projekt (e)** project  
**das Pronomen (-)** pronoun  
**prosit Neujahr!** happy new year!  
**prost!** cheers!  
**der Pudel (s)** poodle  
**der Pulli (s), der Pullover (-)** jumper  
**pünktlich** punctual, on time

**putzen** to clean  
**der Pyjama (s)** pyjamas

## Q

**die Qualität (en)** quality  
**das Quiz (-)** quiz

## R

**das Rad (colloquial)** bike  
**Rad fahren** to ride a bike  
**das Radfahren** bike-riding  
**der Radiergummi (s)** eraser  
**die Raketen (pl.)** fireworks  
**Rap** rap music  
**raten** to guess  
**rate mal, was das ist!** have a guess what this/that is!  
**das Rathaus** town hall  
**das Rätsel (-)** puzzle  
**die Ratte (n)** rat  
**der Rattenfänger** pied piper  
**rauchen** to smoke  
**(der Müll) rausbringen** to take out the rubbish  
**die Realschule (n)** intermediate high school  
**rechts** right  
**das Regal (e)** shelf  
**der Regen** rain  
**der Regenmantel (‘-)** raincoat  
**regnen** to rain  
**das Reh (e)** deer  
**reinhören** to listen in  
**der Reis (no pl.)** rice  
**die Reise (n)** trip  
**reisen** to travel  
**reiten** to ride (a horse)  
**relaxen** to relax  
**Religion/Reli** Religious Education  
**das Rennen** running  
**das Rentier (e)** reindeer  
**reparieren** to repair  
**das Restaurant (s)** restaurant  
**das Rezept (e)** recipe  
**rheinländisch** Rhenish, from Rhineland  
**richtig** right, correct  
**richtig toll** really great  
**riechen** to smell  
**R’n’B** R’n’B music  
**Rock** rock music  
**der Rock (‘e)** skirt  
**roh** raw  
**das Rollenspiel (e)** role-play  
**rosa** pink

**die Rostbratwurst (‘e)** barbecue sausage

**rot** red  
**der Rotkohl (e)** red cabbage  
**der Rucksack (‘e)** backpack, rucksack  
**die Rucksackreise (n)** backpacking trip  
**rufen** to call  
**Rugby** rugby (Union or League)  
**ruhe, bitte!** quiet, please!  
**ruhig** quiet  
**der Rüssel (-)** trunk (of elephant)  
**die rythmische Sportgymnastik** rhythmic gymnastics

## S

**die Sachertorte (n)** sachertorte (rich Austrian chocolate cake)  
**Sächsisch** Saxon (dialect)  
**der Saft (‘e)** juice  
**sagen** to say, to tell  
**sag mal ...** tell me ...  
**die Sahne (no pl.)** cream  
**die Salami (s)** salami  
**das Salamibrötchen (-)** salami roll  
**der Salat (e)** lettuce, salad  
**das Salz** salt  
**salzig** salty  
**der Samstag (e)** Saturday  
**das Sandwich (e)** sandwich  
**Sankt Martin** Saint Martin  
**Sankt Nikolaus** Saint Nicholas  
**satt** full (of food)  
**der Satz (‘e)** sentence  
**sauer** angry, annoyed; sour (taste)  
**das Sauerkraut** sauerkraut (pickled cabbage)  
**das Saxophon (e)** saxophone  
**Schach spielen** to play chess  
**schade ...** unfortunately ...  
**der Schal (s)** scarf  
**die Schallplatte (n)** vinyl record  
**scharf** sharp, spicy  
**schatz** darling  
**die Scheibe (n)** slice  
**scheinen** to shine  
**die Schere (n)** scissors  
**scheu** shy, timid  
**schick** chic  
**schicken** to send  
**das Schiff (e)** ship  
**der Schinken (-)** ham

**das Schinkenbrot (e)** ham sandwich  
**die Schinkenwurst (‘e)** ham sausage  
**schlafen** to sleep  
**der Schlafsack (‘e)** sleeping bag  
**das Schlafzimmer (-)** bedroom  
**der Schlager (-)** romantic song (European style)  
**das Schlagobers (-)** whipped cream (*Austria*)  
**das Schlagzeug (e)** drums  
**die Schlange (n)** snake  
**schlecht** bad  
**das Schlittschuhfahren/-laufen** ice-skating  
**Schlittschuh fahren/laufen** to ice-skate  
**das Schloss (‘er)** castle  
**schmecken** to taste  
**schmeckt’s?** does that taste good?  
**wie schmeckt’s?** how does it taste?  
**das schmeckt!** it tastes good!  
**der Schnabel (‘-)** beak  
**der Schnee** snow  
**der Schneeball (‘e)** snowball  
**die Schneeflocke (n)** snowflake  
**der Schneemann (‘er)** snowman  
**schneiden** to cut  
**schneien** to snow  
**es schneit** it is snowing  
**schnell** fast, quick  
**die Schnellbahn (S-bahn) (en)** (rapid) local railway  
**das Schnellrestaurant (s)** fast-food restaurant  
**das Schnitzel (-)** schnitzel  
**das Schnurrbarthaar (e)** whisker  
**die Schokolade (no pl.)** chocolate  
**der Schokoladekuchen (-)** chocolate cake  
**schon** already  
**schön** beautiful, lovely, fine (weather)  
**schönes Wochenende!** have a nice weekend!  
**schönen Tag noch!** have a nice day!  
**der Schrank (‘e)** cupboard  
**der Schrebergarten (‘-)** community garden/allotment  
**schreiben** to write  
**schreib(t) das auf!** write that down!  
**der Schreibtisch (e)** desk

**Schreibtipp** writing tips  
**der Schuh (e)** shoe  
**die Schulband (s)** school band  
**die Schuldisko (s)** school disco  
**die Schule (n)** school  
**der Schüler (-)** (school) student (*male*)  
**die Schülerin (nen)** (school) student (*female*)  
**die Schülerzeitung (en)** school magazine  
**das Schulfach (‘er)** school subject  
**der Schulhof (‘e)** school yard  
**das Schuljahr (e)** school year  
**das Schulkonzert (e)** school concert  
**die Schultasche (n)** school bag  
**die Schultüte** school cone (decorated)  
**die Schuluniform (en)** school uniform  
**die Schulwebsite (s)** school website  
**der Schwanz (‘e)** tail  
**schwarz** black  
**das schwarzes (schwarzen) Brett (er)** noticeboard  
**die schwarzwälder Kirschtorte (n)** blackforest (cherry) cake  
**das Schwein (e)** pig  
**Schwein haben** to be lucky  
**der Schweinebraten (-)** roast pork  
**die Schweiz** Switzerland  
**schwer** heavy  
**die Schwester (n)** sister  
**die Schwesterschule (n)** sister school  
**schwierig** difficult  
**schwimmen** to swim  
**sechs** six  
**die Seealge (n)** seaweed  
**das Seepferdchen (-)** sea horse  
**sehr** very  
**sehr gut!** very good!  
**ihr seid** you are (*from sein*)  
**sein** to be  
**sein/seine/seinen** his, its, their  
**seit** since  
**die Seite (n)** page, side  
**der Sekt (e)** sparkling wine  
**senden** to send  
**der Senf (e)** mustard  
**senkrecht** vertical (down)  
**der September** September  
**der Service (-)** service

**servus!** hello! bye! (southern Germany and Austria)  
**sich setzen** to sit down  
**setz dich! / setzt euch!** sit down!  
**das Shopping (no pl.)** shopping  
**die Shorts (pl.)** shorts  
**sicher** certainly  
**sie** she, they, her, them  
**Sie** you (*formal*)  
**sie kann** she can  
**sieben** seven  
**Silvester** New Year’s Eve  
**die Silvestersparty (s)** New Year’s Eve party  
**sie/wir sind** they/we are (*from sein*)  
**singen** to sing  
**der Singular** singular (*gramm.*)  
**sitzen** to sit  
**sitzenbleiben** to repeat a year at school  
**das Skateboard (s)** skateboard  
**Skateboard fahren** to (ride a) skateboard  
**Ski** ski  
**das Skifahren** skiing  
**Ski fahren/laufen** to ski  
**die SMS (-)** SMS, text message  
**das Snowboard (s)** snowboard  
**das Snowboarden** snowboarding  
**snowboarden** to snowboard  
**so** so  
**so ein Mist!** crap!, what a smell!  
**so viel** so much  
**so viele** so many  
**die Socke (n)** sock  
**das Sofa (s)** sofa  
**sogar** even  
**der Sohn (‘e)** son  
**sollen** to be supposed to (*modal verb*); should  
**der Sommer (-)** summer  
**sonderbar** unusual  
**die Sonne (n)** sun  
**die Sonne scheint** the sun is shining  
**die Sonnenbrille (n)** sunglasses  
**sonnig** sunny  
**der Sonntag (e)** Sunday  
**sonst** otherwise  
**sonst noch etwas?** something else?  
**die Sorge (n)** worry  
**die Soße (n)** sauce  
**das Souvenir (e)** souvenir

**sowieso** anyway, in any case  
**Sozialkunde** (*no pl.*) Social studies (school subject)  
**Sozialwissenschaft (en)** Social Science (school subject)  
**die Spaghetti (s)** spaghetti  
**Spanien** Spain  
**der Spaß ('e)** fun  
**spät** late  
**später** later  
**spazieren** to stroll, to go for a walk  
**die Speisekarte (n)** menu  
**die Spezialität (en)** speciality  
**das Spiel (e)** game  
**spielen** to play  
**der Spieler (n)** player (*male*)  
**die Spielerin (nen)** player (*female*)  
**das Spielfeld (er)** sportsfield  
**das Spielzimmer (-)** games room  
**die Spinne (n)** spider  
**spitze!** excellent!, fantastic!  
**der Spitzer (-)** sharpener  
**Sport** Sport, PE (school subject)  
**der Sport** sport  
**Sport treiben** to play sport  
**das Sportfest (e)** sports carnival  
**die Sporthalle (n)** sports hall  
**der Sportlehrer (-)** sports teacher (*male*)  
**die Sportlehrerin (nen)** sports teacher (*female*)  
**sportlich** sporty  
**der Sportstar (s)** sport star  
**der Sporttag (e)** sports day  
**das Sportzeug (no pl.)** sports gear  
**Sprachtipps** speaking tips  
**sprechen** to speak  
**das Sprichwort ('er)** saying, proverb  
**der Spülbecken (-)** kitchen sink  
**die Spülmaschine** dishwasher  
**die Spülmaschine einräumen/ ausräumen** to load/unload the dishwasher  
**die Stadt ('e)** city  
**in die Stadt gehen** to go into the city  
**die Stadtmitte (n)** city centre  
**staubsaugen** to vacuum  
**staubwischen** to dust  
**steh(t) auf!** get up!  
**stellen** to put  
**stell dich/stellt euch ...!** stand ...!  
**stell(t) die Stühle hoch!** put the chairs up!

**der Stern (e)** star  
**der Stiefbruder ('-)** stepbrother  
**der Stiefel (-)** boot  
**die Stiefmutter ('-)** stepmother  
**die Stiefschwester (n)** stepsister  
**der Stiefvater ('-)** stepfather  
**der Stift (e)** pencil  
**stimmhaft** voiced  
**stimmlos** unvoiced  
**stimmt!** true!, that's right!  
**stimmt das?** is that true/right?  
**der Stock ('e)** floor, storey (of a building)  
**im ersten Stock** on the first floor  
**im zweiten Stock** on the second floor  
**das Stockwerk (e)** floor, storey  
**der Stollen (-)** German Christmas cake  
**der Strand ('e)** beach  
**am Strand** at the beach  
**die Straße (n)** street  
**die Straßenbahn (en)** tram  
**der Strauß (en)** ostrich  
**streicheln** to pat  
**streng** strict  
**der Strohstern (e)** straw star  
**die Struktur** structure  
**die Strumpfhose (n)** (pair of) tights, pantyhose  
**stubenrein** house-trained  
**das Stück (e)** piece (of cake, fruit)  
**der Student (en)** (university) student (*male*)  
**die Studentin (nen)** (university) student (*female*)  
**der Stuhl ('e)** chair  
**die Stunde (n)** hour  
**der Stundenplan ('e)** timetable  
**stürmisch** stormy  
**suchen** to look for  
**super** great  
**super toll** awesome  
**Surfen** surfing  
**surfen** to surf  
**das Sushi** sushi  
**süß** cute, sweet

**T**

**die Tafel (n)** (black/white)board  
**der Tag (e)** day  
**tag!** hello!, hi!  
**schönen Tag noch!** have a nice day!  
**das Tagebuch ('er)** diary

**die Tante (n)** aunt  
**tanzen** to dance  
**die Tanzfläche (n)** dance floor  
**die Tasche (n)** bag, pocket  
**der Taschenrechner (-)** calculator  
**die Tasse (n)** cup  
**die Tatze (n)** paw (of a big cat)  
**das Tauchen** diving  
**das Team (s)** team  
**der Teamleiter (-)** team leader (*male*)  
**die Teamleiterin (nen)** team leader (*female*)  
**das Teamspiel (e)** team game  
**Techno** techno music  
**das Technofan** techno fan  
**der Teddybär (en)** teddy bear  
**der Tee (s)** tea  
**der Teig (e)** dough, batter, pastry  
**telefonieren (mit)** to call, to telephone  
**das Telefongespräch (e)** telephone call/conversation  
**die Telefonnummer (n)** telephone number  
**Tennis** tennis  
**der Test (s)** test  
**teuer** expensive  
**der Text (e)** text (message)  
**texten** to send a text message (SMS)  
**das Thema (Themen)** subject, topic  
**das Tier (e)** animal  
**das Tierfutter** pet food  
**die Tierhandlung (en)** pet shop  
**das Tierhotel (s)** animal hotel  
**der Tiger (-)** tiger  
**der Tisch (e)** table, desk  
**Tischtennis** table tennis  
**der Toast (s)** toast  
**die Tochter ('-)** daughter  
**todlangweilig** dead boring  
**todmüde** exhausted  
**todschick** very classy  
**toi, toi, toi!** best of luck!  
**die Toilette (n)** toilet  
**auf die Toilette gehen** to go to the toilet  
**toll** great, super  
**die Tomate (n)** tomato  
**die Tomatensoße (n)** tomato sauce  
**das Top** (clothing) top  
**die Torte (n)** torte, gateau  
**tot** dead

**total** totally  
**total abgefahren** totally sick  
**der Tourismus** tourism  
**der Tourist (en)** tourist (*male*)  
**die Touristin (nen)** tourist (*female*)  
**der Trabant (en)** Trabant (East German car)  
**die Trachten (pl.)** national costumes  
**tragen** to wear, to carry  
**trainieren** to train  
**das Training (s)** practice, training  
**der Trainingsanzug (‘e)** tracksuit  
**Trance** trance music  
**die Traube (n)** grape  
**die Traumschule (n)** dream school  
**traurig** sad  
**treffen** to meet  
**sich treffen** to meet  
**(viel Sport) treiben** to do/play (a lot of sport)  
**trennbar** separable  
**die Treppe (n)** stairs  
**der Trickfilm (e)** animated film, cartoon  
**das Trikot (s)** (soccer) jersey  
**trinken** to drink  
**die Trompete (n)** trumpet  
**tschau!** ciao!, so long!, bye!  
**tschüs!, tschüssi!** bye!, see you later!  
**das T-Shirt (s)** T-shirt  
**tunken** to dip  
**die Tür (en)** door  
**die Türkei** Turkey  
**türkisch (adj.)** Turkish  
**turnen** to do gymnastics  
**die Turnhalle (n)** gymnasium  
**der Turnschuh (e)** trainer, sneaker  
**tut mir Leid** I’m sorry!  
**der Typ (en)** type (of person), guy  
**typisch** typical

## U

**die U-bahn (Utergrundbahn) (en)** underground train  
**überall** everywhere  
**überhaupt** at all  
**überraschen** to surprise  
**die Überraschung (en)** surprise  
**überreden** to persuade  
**übersetzen** to translate  
**die Uhr (en)** clock, watch

... **Uhr** ... o’clock  
**die Umfrage (n)** survey  
**der Umlaut (e)** umlaut  
**und** and  
**und du?** and (what about) you?  
**und wie?** how so?  
**ungefähr** dangerous  
**ungenügend** unsatisfactory  
**unglaublich** unbelievably  
**uns** us  
**unten** down there  
**unter** under  
**unser/unsere/unsere** our  
**der Unterricht (e)** the lesson  
**unverschämt** disgraceful  
**unwichtig** unimportant  
**der Urlaub** holiday  
**Urlaub machen** to take a holiday  
**die USA (pl.)** the USA

## V

**der Vater (‘-)** father  
**das Verb (en)** verb  
**verbinden** to join  
**verbinde!** join!  
**verboten** forbidden  
**vergessen** to forget  
**vergiss mich nicht!** don’t forget me!  
**verheiratet** married  
**verkaufen** to buy  
**verloren** lost  
**vermissen** to miss (somebody/ something)  
**verrückt nach** crazy about  
**verschieden** different  
**verstehen** to understand  
**verzieren** to decorate  
**das Video (s)** video  
**viel** much, a lot  
**viel Glück!** good luck!  
**viel Spaß!** have fun!  
**viele** many  
**vielen Dank!** thank you!  
**der Vielfraß (‘e)** glutton, greedy-guts  
**vielleicht** maybe, perhaps  
**vier** four  
**das Viertel (-)** quarter  
**Viertel nach/vor ...** quarter past/to ...  
**der Vogel (‘-)** bird  
**das Vogelfutter** bird food  
**Völkerball** dodgeball

**die Volksmusik** folk music  
**Volleyball** volleyball  
**von** from, by  
**von wem?** from who?  
**vor ...** before ... (the hour)  
**vorbereiten** to prepare  
**der Vormittag (e)** morning  
**der Vorname (n)** first name  
**vorne** to/at the front  
**der Vorort (en)** suburb  
**die Vorschau (en)** preview

## W

**waagrecht** horizontal (across)  
**wachsen** to wax, to grow  
**der Wagen (-)** car  
**der Wahnsinn** madness  
**wahnsinnig** incredibly  
**der Wald (‘er)** forest  
**wandern gehen** to go hiking  
**wann?** when?  
**wann hast du Geburtstag?** when is your birthday?  
**war/waren** was/were (*from sein*)  
**warm** warm  
**warten (auf)** to wait (for)  
**warum?** why?  
**warum denn nicht?** why not?  
**was?** what?  
**was denn?** what is it?  
**was geht?** what’s up?  
**was geht ab?** what’s up?  
**was gibt’s Neues?** what’s new?  
**was ist das?** what is that?  
**was ist denn hier los?** what’s going on here?  
**was ist los?** what’s up?  
**was kostet/kosten ...?** how much does ... cost?  
**was macht das?** how much is it?  
**die Waschmaschine (n)** washing machine  
**das Wasser** water  
**die Website (s)** website  
**weg** away  
**der Weg (e)** way  
**weg|bleiben** to stay away  
**weg|fahren** to go away  
**weg|fliegen** flown away  
**weg|kommen** to come away  
**weg|rennen** to run away  
**das Weibchen (-)** female animal  
**weich** soft

**das Weihnachten** (no pl.)  
Christmas

**der Weihnachtsbaum** (‘e)  
Christmas tree

**das Weihnachtspätzchen** (-)  
Christmas biscuit

**der Weihnachtsmann** (‘er)  
Santa Claus

**der Weihnachtsmarkt** (‘e)  
Christmas market

**der Weihnachtsschmuck** (no pl.)  
Christmas ornaments

**der Wein** (e) wine

**weiß** white

**die Weißwurst** (‘e) veal sausage

**weit** wide, far

**welche?** which?

**der Wellensittich** (e) budgerigar,  
budgie

**die Welt** (en) world

**wenn** if

**wer?** who?

**wer ist das?** who is that?

**die Werbung**  
(Werben) advertisement

**Werbung machen** to promote

**ich werde ...** I will ...

**ich werde diese Zeit nie vergessen** I will never forget this time

**werfen** to throw

**wetten** to bet

**das Wetter** (-) weather

**wichtig** important

**widerlich** revolting, repulsive

**wie?** how?

**wie alt bist du?** how old are you?

**wie bitte?** pardon?

**wie geht es Ihnen?** how are you? (formal)

**wie geht's?** how are you? (informal)

**wie geht's, wie steht's?** how are you, what's going on?

**wie ist das Wetter?** what is the weather like?

**wie lange?** how long?

**wie spät ist es?** what time is it?

**wie viel?** how much?

**wie viel Uhr ist es?** what's the time?

**wie viele?** how many?

**wie wär's ...?** how was ...?

**wie waren die Ferien?** how were the holidays?

**wieder** again

**wiederholen** to repeat

**wiederhole!** repeat!

**Wiedersehen!** bye!

**Wien** Vienna

**der Wiener Schnitzel** (-)  
(crumbed) schnitzel

**der Wievielte ist heute?** what date is it today?

**das Wildschwein** (e) wild boar

**willkommen!** welcome!

**windig** windy

**der Winter** (-) winter

**die Winterkleidung** winter clothes

**die Winterreise** (n) winter holiday

**der Wintersport** winter sport

**der Wintersportort** (e) winter sports resort

**wir** we

**wirklich** really

**wirklich?** really?

**wo?** where?

**wo warst du?** where were you?

**wo wohnen wir?** where do we live?

**die Woche** (n) week

**das Wochenende** (n) weekend

**schönes Wochenende!** have nice weekend!

**der Wochentag** (e) day of the week, weekday

**woher?** where from?

**woher kommst du?** where are you from?

**der Wohnblock** (s) block of flats/apartments

**wohnen** to live

**die Wohngemeinschaft** (en)  
shared accommodation group

**die Wohnung** (en) apartment, flat

**das Wohnzimmer** (-) living room

**der Wolf** (‘e) wolf

**wolkig** cloudy

**wollen** to want (modal verb)

**der Wolpertinger** (-) mythical German animal

**das Wort** (‘er) word

**die Wortstellung** (en) word order (gramm.)

**der Wortschatz** (‘e) vocabulary

**die Wortsuche** (n) word search

**das Wunder** (-) wonder

**wunderbar** wonderful

**wünschen** to wish

**die Wunschliste** (n) wish list

**die Wurst** (‘e) sausage

**die Wurstsorte** (n) type of sausage

**Z**

**die Zahl** (en) number

**der Zahn** (‘e) tooth

**das Zebra** (s) zebra

**zehn** ten

**die Zeit** (en) time

**der Zeitglockenturm** (‘e) clock tower

**die Zeitung** (en) newspaper

**der Zettel** (-) piece of paper

**das Zeugnis** (se) report card

**ziehen** to pull

**ziemlich** quite, rather

**die Zitrone** (n) lemon

**die Zone** (n) zone

**der Zoo** (s) zoo

**die Zoohandlung** (en) pet shop

**zu** at, to, too

**zu Hause** at home

**zu lange** too long

**der Zucker** sugar

**die Zuckermandel** (n) sugar almond

**zuerst** first (of all)

**der Zug** (‘e) train

**die Zukunft** future

**zum/machen** to close

**zum** to the

**zum Beispiel** for example

**zum Training** to (sport) train

**zum ersten Mal** for the first time

**der Zungenbrecher** (-) tongue-twister

**zur** to the

**zur Schule** to the school

**zurückkommen** to return

**zusammen** together

**zu/sehen** to watch

**zutraulich** trusting

**zwanzig** twenty

**zwei** two

**Zweiter Weihnachtstag** Boxing Day

**zwischen** between

**zwölf** twelve

# ENGLISCH-DEUTSCH WORTSCHATZ

## A

a, an **ein** (*masc.*), **eine** (*fem.*), **ein** (*neut.*), **einen** (*masc.*)  
 a lot **viel**  
 to be able to **können**  
 about **darüber**  
 accommodation (shared group)  
**die Wohngemeinschaft (en)**  
 accusative (case)  
**der Akkusativ (e)**  
 active **aktiv**  
 address **die Adresse (n)**  
 address book  
**das Adressbuch (‘er)**  
 Advent **der Advent (e)**  
 Advent calendar **der  
Adventskalender (-)**  
 adverb **das Adverb (ien)**  
 advertisement **die Anzeige (n)**  
 aeroplane **das Flugzeug (e)**  
 to be afraid (of) **Angst haben  
(vor)**  
 after (time) **nach**  
 afternoon **der Nachmittag (e)**  
 in the afternoon **nachmittags**  
 afterwards **nachher**  
 again **wieder**  
 aggressive **aggressiv**  
 airport **der Flughafen (‘-)**  
 air travel **die Luftfahrt (en)**  
 all **alle, alles**  
 all the best **alles Gute!**  
 to allow **erlauben**  
 to be allowed to **dürfen**  
 almost **fast, knapp**  
 alpine horn **das Alpenhorn (‘er)**  
 alpine pasture (s) **die Alm (en)**  
 the Alps **die Alpen**  
 already **gleich, schon**  
 also **auch**  
 always **immer**  
 I am **ich bin (from sein)**  
 amazing **herrlich**  
 American **amerikanisch**  
 and **und**  
 and (what about) you? **und du?**  
 angel **der Engel (-)**  
 angry **böse, sauer**  
 animal **das Tier (e), (male) das  
Männchen (-), (female) das  
Weibchen (-)**

animal hotel **das Tierhotel (s)**  
 animated film **der Trickfilm (e)**  
 annoyed **sauer**  
 answer **die Antwort (en)**  
 to answer **antworten,  
beantworten**  
 antelope **die Gazelle (n)**  
 anyway **sowieso**  
 apartment **die Wohnung(en)**  
 apartments (block of)  
**der Wohnblock (s)**  
 apology **die Entschuldigung (en)**  
 appetite **der Hunger**  
 apple **der Apfel (‘-)**  
 apple cake **der Apfelkuchen (-)**  
 apple juice **der Apfelsaft (‘e)**  
 apple strudel **der Apfelstrudel (-)**  
 April **der April**  
 are you coming too? (do you want  
to come?) **kommt ihr mit?**  
 you are **du bist (from sein)**  
 Argentina **Argentinien**  
 to arrive **an|kommen**  
 Art (school subject) **Kunst**  
 art gallery  
**das Kunstmuseum (en)**  
 as **als**  
 as ... as **genauso**  
 as well **auch**  
 Asian **asiatisch**  
 to ask **fragen**  
 assembly hall **die Aula (Aulen)**  
 at **auf, bei, zu**  
 at a glance **auf einen Blick**  
 at all **überhaupt**  
 at home **zu Hause**  
 at ... o'clock **um ... Uhr**  
 at our place **bei uns**  
 at your place **bei dir**  
 at the front **vorne**  
 at once **gleich**  
 to pay attention **aufpassen**  
 attic **der Dachboden (‘-)**  
 attractive **attraktiv**  
 der August **August**  
 aunt **die Tante (n)**  
 Australia **Australien**  
 Australian **australisch (adj.);  
der Australier (-),  
die Australierin (nen)**

## Abbreviations used:

*adj.* – adjective  
*adv.* – adverb  
*fem.* – feminine  
*gramm.* – grammar term  
*masc.* – masculine  
*neut.* – neuter  
*pl.* – plural  
*sing.* – singular

## B

Australian Rules  
 football **australischer Fußball**  
 Austria **Österreich**  
 autumn **der Herbst (e)**  
 away **weg**  
 awesome **super toll**  
 baby **das Baby (s)**  
 at the back **hinten**  
 backpack **der Rucksack (‘e)**  
 backpacking trip  
**die Rucksackreise (n)**  
 bad **schlecht**  
 badminton **Badminton**  
 bag **die Tasche (n)**  
 to bake **backen**  
 balcony **der Balkon(s)**  
 ball **der Ball (‘e)**  
 ballet dancer **der Balletttänzer (-)**  
 (*male*), **die Balletttänzerin (nen)**  
 (*female*)  
 balloon **der Luftballon (s)**  
 banana **die Banane (n)**  
 band rehearsal **die Bandprobe (n)**  
 barbecue **die Grillparty (s)**  
 to barbecue **grillen**  
 basketball **Basketball**  
 basketball training  
**das Basketballtraining**  
 bathroom **das Bad(ezimmer) (-)**  
 batter **der Teig (e)**  
 bauble **die Kugel (n)**  
 Bavarian (dialect) **bay(e)risch**  
 to be **sein**  
 to be able to **können**  
 to be afraid (of) **Angst haben (vor)**  
 beach **der Strand (‘e)**  
 at the beach **am Strand**  
 beak **der Schnabel (‘)**  
 bean **die Bohne (n)**  
 bean stew **der Bohneneintopf (‘e)**  
 beanie **die Mütze (n)**  
 bear **der Bär (en)**  
 beautiful **schön**  
 because **denn, weil**  
 bed **das Bett (en)**  
 bedroom **das Schlafzimmer (-)**  
 child's bedroom  
**das Kinderzimmer (-)**

beer **das Bier (e)**  
 beer mug **der Bierkrug (‘e)**  
 bee sting cake (*German cake*)  
**der Bienenstich (e)**  
 before (the hour) **vor ...**  
 to begin **anfangen, beginnen**  
 beginner **der Anfänger (-)**  
 beginning **der Anfang (‘e)**  
 behind **hinten**  
 belated **nachträglich**  
 Belgium **Belgien**  
 to believe **glauben**  
 besides **außerdem**  
 ... the best ... **am besten,**  
 ... **am liebsten**  
 best of luck! **toi, toi, toi!**  
 best wishes **Glückwünsche,**  
**herzliche Grüße, beste Grüße**  
 to bet **wetten**  
 better **besser**  
 better than **besser als**  
 between **zwischen**  
 to bid **bieten**  
 big **groß**  
 too big **zu groß**  
 big appetite **der Bärenhunger**  
 bicycle, bike **das Fahrrad (‘er)**  
 bike-riding **das Radfahren**  
 biography **die Biographie (n)**  
 Biology **Biologie (Bio)**  
 bird **der Vogel (‘e)**  
 bird food **das Vogelfutter**  
 birthday **der Geburtstag (e)**  
 best wishes on/all the best for  
 your birthday! **alles Gute zum**  
**Geburtstag!**  
 happy birthday! **herzlichen**  
**Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag!**  
 much love on your birthday!  
**alles Liebe zum Geburtstag!**  
 birthday boy/girl  
**das Geburtstagskind (er)**  
 birthday cake  
**der Geburtstagskuchen (-)**  
 birthday party  
**die Geburtstagsparty (s)**  
 birthday present  
**das Geburtstagsgeschenk (e)**  
 biscuits **das Gebäck (e),**  
**die Plätzchen (-)**  
 a bit **ein bisschen**  
 to bite **beißen**  
 black **schwarz**  
 blackforest (cherry) cake **die**  
**Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte (n)**  
 (black/white)board **die Tafel (n)**  
 bless you! **Gesundheit!**

blouse **die Bluse (n)**  
 blue **blau**  
 boat **das Boot (e)**  
 Bolivia **Bolivien**  
 bon appetit! **guten Appetit!**  
 book **das Buch (‘er)**  
 boomerang **der Bumerang (‘e)**  
 boot **der Stiefel (-)**  
 boring **langweilig**  
 dead boring **todlangweilig**  
 both **beide**  
 boxing **das Boxen**  
 Boxing Day **der Zweiter**  
**Weihnachtstag**  
 boy **der Junge (n)**  
 boys **die Jungs**  
 Brandenburg Gate  
**das Brandenburger Tor**  
 bratwurst sausage  
**die Bratwurst (‘e)**  
 bratwurst with curry sauce  
**die Currywurst (‘e)**  
 Brazil **Brasilien**  
 bread **das Brot (e)**  
 bread roll **das Brötchen (-)**  
 breakfast **das Frühstück (e)**  
 to have breakfast **frühstücken**  
 brilliant **glänzend**  
 to bring **bringen**  
 to bring along **mitbringen**  
 I'm bringing ... **ich bringe ...**  
**mit**  
 broken **kaputt**  
 brother **der Bruder (‘-)**  
 brothers and sisters  
**die Geschwister (pl.)**  
 brown **braun**  
 to have brunch **brunchen**  
 budgerigar, budgie  
**der Wellensittich (e)**  
 to build **bauen**  
 bunk beds **das Doppelstockbett**  
**(en), das Etagenbett (en)**  
 bus **der Bus (se)**  
 by bus **mit dem Bus**  
 on the bus **im Bus**  
 bus driver **der Busfahrer (-)**  
*(male), die Busfahrerin (nen)*  
*(female)*  
 business **das Geschäft (e)**  
 but **aber**  
 but yes! **doch!**  
 but of course! **aber sicher!**  
 butter **die Butter**  
 to buy **kaufen**  
 by **von, mit**

bye! **servus!** (*southern Germany  
 and Austria*), **tschau!, tschüs!,  
 tschüssi!, Wiedersehen!**

## G

café **das Café (s)**  
 at/in the café **im Café**  
 cage **der Käfig (e)**  
 cake **der Kuchen (-)**  
 cake shop **die Konditorei (en)**  
 calculator **der Taschenrechner (-)**  
 calendar **der Kalender (-)**  
 to call **rufen, (on the phone)**  
**anrufen, telefonieren**  
 to be called **heißen**  
 can (*modal verb*) **können**  
 can I help you? **ja, bitte?,**  
**bitte schön?**  
 Canada **Kanada**  
 canary **der Kanarienvogel (‘-)**  
 candle **die Kerze (n)**  
 can't wait! **da bin ich ja**  
**gespannt!, ich bin schon**  
**gespannt!**  
 car **das Auto (s), der Wagen (-)**  
 (greeting) card **die Karte (n)**  
 carnival **Karneval**  
 carnival costume  
**das Karnevalskostüm (e)**  
 carrot **die Karotte (n),**  
**die Möhre (n)**  
 to carry **tragen**  
 cartoon **der Trickfilm (e)**  
 castle **die Burg (en), die Festung**  
**(en), das Schloss (‘er)**  
 cat **die Katze (n),**  
*(male) der Kater (-)*  
 cat food **das Katzenfutter (-)**  
 catch it straight away!  
**fang sie sofort!**  
 to celebrate **feiern**  
 celebration **das Fest (e)**  
 cellar **der Keller (-)**  
 cent **der Cent (s)**  
 certainly **sicher**  
 chair **der Stuhl (‘e)**  
 to chat **chatten**  
 checked (*pattern*) **kariert**  
 checklist **die Checkliste (n)**  
 cheeky **frech**  
 cheers! **prost!**  
 cheese **der Käse (-)**  
 cheese fondue **das Käsefondue (s)**  
 cheese sandwich **das Käsebrot (e)**  
 cheesecake **der Käsekuchen (-)**  
 cheetah **der Gepard (en)**  
 Chemistry **Chemie**

cherry **die Kirsche (n)**  
 to play chess **Schach spielen**  
 chic **schick**  
 chicken **das Hähnchen (-),  
 das Huhn (‘er)**  
 child **das Kind (er)**  
 Chile **Chile**  
 chilly **kühl**  
 chinchilla **das Chinchilla (s)**  
 Chinese (language)  
**das Chinesisch**  
 chocolate **die Schokolade (no  
 pl.), (individual) die Praline (n)**  
 chocolate cake  
**der Schokoladekuchen (-)**  
 choir **der Chor (‘e)**  
 choir members  
**die Chorleute (pl.)**  
 choir rehearsal  
**die Chorprobe (n)**  
 Christmas **das Weihnachten  
 (no pl.)**  
 (German) Christmas cake  
**der Stollen (-)**  
 Christmas Day **(der Erster)  
 Weihnachtstag**  
 Christmas Eve **der Heiligabend,  
 der Heilige Abend**  
 Christmas market  
**der Weihnachtsmarkt (‘e)**  
 Christmas ornament  
**der Weihnachtsschmuck**  
 Christmas stocking  
**der Nikolausstiefel (-)**  
 Christmas tree  
**der Weihnachtsbaum (‘e)**  
 Christmas wreath  
**der Adventskranz (‘e)**  
 ciao! **tschau!**  
 cinema **das Kino (s)**  
 in/to the cinema **ins Kino**  
 city **die Stadt (‘e)**  
 into the city **in die Stadt**  
 large/big city  
**die Großstadt (‘e)**  
 city centre **die Stadtmitte (n)**  
 clarinet **die Klarinette (n)**  
 class **die Klasse (n)**  
 class activity  
**die Klassenaktivität (-)**  
 class party **das Klassenfest (e)**  
 class photo **das Klassenfoto (s)**  
 class project  
**das Klassenprojekt (e)**  
 class teacher  
**der Klassenlehrer (-) (male),  
 die Klassenlehrerin (nen)  
 (female)**

class test **die Klassenarbeit (en)**  
 classical music **klassische  
 Musik**  
 classmate **der Klassenkamerad**  
 classroom  
**das Klassenzimmer (-)**  
 classy **todsick**  
 class trip/excursion  
**die Klassenfahrt (en)**  
 claw **die Kralle (n), die Klaue (n)**  
 to clean **putzen**  
 clean the board! **mach(t) die  
 Tafel sauber!**  
 clear **klar**  
 clock **die Uhr (en)**  
 clock tower  
**der Zeitglockenturm (‘e)**  
 to close **zu|machen**  
 close the door! **mach(t) die Tür  
 zu!**  
 close your books! **macht eure  
 Bücher zu!**  
 clothes **die Klamotten (pl.)  
 (colloquial), die Kleidung (en)**  
 cloudy **wolkig**  
 it is cloudy **es ist wolkig**  
 coat **der Mantel (‘-)**  
 cocoa **der Kakao (s)**  
 code **der Kode (s)**  
 coffee **der Kaffee (s)**  
 cola **die Cola (s)**  
 cold **kalt**  
 it is cold **es ist kalt**  
 to collect **ein|sammeln**  
 colour **die Farbe (n)**  
 coloured pencil **der Buntstift (e)**  
 colourful **bunt**  
 combination  
**die Kombination (en)**  
 to come **kommen**  
 come on! **komm!, na, los!**  
 come on in! **na, komm mal  
 rein!**  
 come to the board! **komm(t)  
 an die Tafel!**  
 to come (along) too **mit|kommen**  
 I'm coming along! **Ich komme  
 mit!**  
 to come away **weg|kommen**  
 comfortable **bequem**  
 comma **das Komma (s)**  
 commentary **der Kommentar (e)**  
 community garden/allotment  
**der Schrebergarten (‘-)**  
 company **die Firma (Firmen)**  
 complete **ganz**  
 to complete **ergänzen**

complicated **kompliziert**  
 computer **der Computer (-)**  
 computer game  
**das Computerspiel (e)**  
 to concentrate (*reflexive verb*)  
**sich konzentrieren**  
 I am concentrating  
**ich konzentriere mich**  
 concert **das Konzert (e)**  
 congratulations  
**der Glückwunsch (‘e)**  
 congratulations! **gratuliere!,  
 herzlichen Glückwunsch!**  
 conversation **das Gespräch (e)**  
 cookbook **das Kochbuch (‘e)**  
 cooked **gekocht**  
 cool **cool, geil, kühl**  
 it is cool (weather) **es ist kühl**  
 corn on the cob **der Maiskolben (-)**  
 correct **richtig**  
 corridor **der Flur (en)**  
 to cost **kosten**  
 cosy **gemütlich**  
 country **das Land (‘er)**  
 in the country **auf dem Land**  
 country music **die Countrymusik**  
 cousin **der Cousin (s) (male),  
 die Cousine (n) (female)**  
 cow **die Kuh (‘e)**  
 cow bell **die Kuhglocke (n)**  
 craft **das Handwerk**  
 crap! **so ein Mist!**  
 crazy about **verrückt nach**  
 cream **die Sahne (pl.), (whipped)  
 das Schlagobers (-) (Austria)**  
 cricket **Kricket**  
 crocodile **das Krokodil (e)**  
 cross your fingers! **drück die  
 Daumen!**  
 crossword puzzle  
**das Kreuzworträtsel (-)**  
 cuckoo clock **die Kuckucksuhr (en)**  
 cuddly **kuschelig, knuddelig**  
 cup **die Tasse (n)**  
 cupboard **der Schrank (‘e)**  
 curry sauce **die Currysoße (n)**  
 to cut **schneiden**  
 cute **niedlich, süß**

## D

dad **der Papa (s)**  
 daddy **der Papi (s)**  
 to dance **tanzen**  
 dance floor **die Tanzfläche (n)**  
 dance music **Dance**  
 dangerous **gefährlich**

dark **dunkel**  
 dark blue **dunkelblau**  
 darling **der Schatz**  
 date **das Datum (Daten)**  
 daughter **die Tochter (‘-)**  
 day **der Tag (e)**  
   have a nice day! **schönen Tag noch!**  
 days of the week **die Wochentage**  
 dead **tot**  
 dear **liebe, lieber**  
   dear Anna **liebe Anna**  
   dear Christian **lieber Christian**  
 December **der Dezember**  
 decoration **die Dekoration (en)**  
 to decorate **verzieren**  
 deer **das Reh (e)**  
 definitely **bestimmt**  
 definitely! **klar!**  
 degree (temperature) **der Grad (e)**  
 delicious **lecker**  
 to depart **abfahren**  
 to describe **beschreiben**  
 designer **der Designer (-) (male),  
 die Designerin (nen) (female)**  
 desk **der Schreibtisch (e),  
 der Tisch (e)**  
 dessert **die Nachspeise (n)**  
 dialogue **der Dialog (e)**  
 diary **das Tagebuch (‘er)**  
 different **anders, verschieden**  
 difficult **schwierig**  
 digital **digital**  
 dingo **der Dingo (s)**  
 dining room **das Esszimmer (-)**  
 dining table **der Esstisch (e)**  
 dinner **das Abendessen (-)**  
 to dip **tunken**  
 directly **direkt**  
 dirndl **das Dirndlkleid (er)**  
 disappointed **enttäuscht**  
 disgraceful **unverschämt**  
 disgusting **ekelhaft, eklig**  
 dishwasher **die Spülmaschine**  
   to load/unload the  
   dishwasher **die Spülmaschine  
 einräumen/ausräumen**  
 to dislike doing (something)  
**nicht gern machen**  
   I dislike singing **ich singe nicht  
 gern**  
 diving **das Tauchen**  
 divorced **geschieden**  
 DJ **der DJ (s)**

to do **machen**  
 do you want to dance? **hast du  
 Lust zu tanzen?**  
 dodgeball **Völkerball**  
 does that taste good?  
**schmeckt’s?**  
 dog **der Hund (e), (female) die  
 Hündin (nen)**  
 doggy **das Hündchen (-)**  
 dog lovers **die Hundefreunde (pl.)**  
 doner kebab **der Döner Kebab (s)**  
 donkey **der Esel (-)**  
 don’t panic! **keine Panik!**  
 door **die Tür (en)**  
 dough **der Teig (e)**  
 (jam-filled) doughnut  
**der Berliner (-)**  
 down **hinab**  
 down there **unten**  
 download voucher  
**der Download-Gutschein (e)**  
 dream school  
**die Traumschule (n)**  
 dress **das Kleid (er)**  
 to drink **trinken**  
 drink **das Getränk (e)**  
 to drive **fahren**  
 drums **das Schlagzeug (e)**  
 to dry (the dishes) **abtrocknen**  
 duck **die Ente (n)**  
 to dust **staubwischen**  
 to be dying to **gespannt sein**

## E

each other **einander**  
 eagle **der Adler (-)**  
 ear **das Ohr (en)**  
 earring **der Ohrring (e)**  
 early **früh**  
 earth **die Erde (n)**  
 Easter **das Ostern**  
   happy Easter! **frohe Ostern!**  
 Easter bunny **der Osterhase (n)**  
 Easter Sunday **der Ostersonntag**  
 easy/easily **einfach, leicht**  
 to eat **essen (used only for  
 humans), fressen (used only for  
 animals)**  
 eek! **iiiihh!**  
 egg **das Ei (er)**  
 eight **acht**  
 elephant **der Elefant (en)**  
 eleven **elf**  
 elf **der Elf (en)**  
 else **anders**

email **die E-Mail (s), die Mail (s)**  
 to send an email **mailen**  
 emu **der Emu (s)**  
 end **das Ende (s)**  
 energetic **aktiv**  
 engineer **der Ingenieur (e) (male),  
 die Ingenieurin (nen) (female)**  
 English (language) **Englisch**  
 enjoy your meal! **guten Appetit!,  
 (formal) Mahlzeit!**  
 equal **gleich**  
 eraser **der Radiergummi (s)**  
 especially **besonders**  
 euro (currency) **der Euro (s)**  
 European **europäisch**  
 even **sogar**  
 evening **der Abend (e)**  
 every **jede**  
 everybody **alle**  
 everything **alles**  
 everywhere **überall**  
 exactly **genau**  
   exactly! **genau!, ganz genau!**  
 exams (final) **das Abitur**  
 excellent **genial, ausgezeichnet**  
 excellent! **genial!, spitze!**  
 exchange partner  
**der Austauschpartner (-) (male),  
 die Austauschpartnerin (nen)  
 (female)**  
 exchange student  
**der Austauschschüler (-) (male),  
 die Austauschschülerin (nen)  
 (female)**  
 excursion **der Ausflug (‘e),  
 die Klassenfahrt (en)**  
 excuse **die Entschuldigung (en)**  
 excuse me! **Entschuldigung!  
 (please) excuse me!  
 entschuldigen, Sie!**  
 exercise book **das Heft (e)**  
 exhausted **kaputt, todmüde**  
 expensive **teuer**  
 explanation **die Erklärung (en)**  
 expression **der Ausdruck (‘e)**  
 eye **das Auge (n)**

## F

fair **fair**  
 falcon **der Falke (n)**  
 to fall **fallen**  
 false **falsch**  
 family **die Familie (n)**  
 family photo **das Familienfoto (s)**  
 family tree  
**das Familienstammbaum (‘e)**  
 famous **berühmt**

fantastic **fantastisch, spitze**  
 fantastic! **spitze!**  
 far **weit**  
 farewell **der Abschied (e)**  
 farewell card  
**die Abschiedskarte (n)**  
 farm **der Bauernhof (‘e)**  
 fashion parade  
**die Modenschau (en)**  
 fast **schnell**  
 fast-food restaurant  
**das Schnellrestaurant (s)**  
 father **der Vater (‘-)**  
 favourite book  
**der Lieblingsbuch (‘er)**  
 favourite cake  
**der Lieblingskuchen (-)**  
 favourite colour  
**die Lieblingsfarbe (n)**  
 favourite day **der Lieblingstag (e)**  
 favourite meal  
**das Lieblingsessen (-)**  
 favourite subject  
**das Lieblingsfach (‘er)**  
 favourite team  
**die Lieblingsmannschaft (n)**  
 fear **die Angst (‘e)**  
 feather **die Feder (n)**  
 February **der Februar**  
 to feed (animals) **füttern**  
 feminine **das Femininum**  
 ferry **die Fähre (n)**  
 film **der Film (e)**  
 film star **der Filmstar (s)**  
 fin **die Flosse (n)**  
 final exams **das Abitur**  
 finally **endlich**  
 to find **finden**  
 fine (weather) **schön**  
 it is fine **es ist schön**  
 finished **fertig**  
 fireworks **die Raketen (pl.)**  
 firm **die Firma (Firmen)**  
 first **erst, erstmal**  
 first (of all) **zuerst**  
 the first **der/die Erste**  
 first floor **das Erdgeschoss (e)**  
 on the first floor  
**im ersten Stock**  
 on the second floor  
**im zweiten Stock**  
 first name **der Vorname (n)**  
 fish **der Fisch (e)**  
 fish food **das Fischfutter**  
 five **fünf**  
 flat tyre **der Platten (-)**

flat (apartment)  
**die Wohnung(en)**  
 flats (block of) **der Wohnblock (s)**  
 flight **der Flug (‘e)**  
 floor (of a building) **der Stock**  
**(‘e), das Stockwerk (e)**  
 floral (pattern) **geblümt**  
 flower **die Blume (n)**  
 flown away **weggeflogen**  
 fluffy **flauschig**  
 flute **die Flöte (n)**  
 to fly **fliegen**  
 focus **der Fokus (se)**  
 foggy **neblig**  
 to fold **falten**  
 folk music **die Volksmusik**  
 to be fond of (someone)  
**(jemanden) lieb haben**  
 food **das Essen (no pl.)**  
 football training  
**das Fußballtraining (s)**  
 for **für**  
 for example **zum Beispiel**  
 for me **für mich**  
 forbidden **verboten**  
 foreign language  
**die Fremdsprache (n)**  
 to forget **vergessen**  
 don't forget me! **vergiss mich**  
**nicht!**  
 forest **der Wald (‘er)**  
 fortress **die Festung (en)**  
 four **vier**  
 France **Frankreich**  
 frankfurter (sausage)  
**das Frankfurter Würstchen**  
 free **frei**  
 freeway/motorway  
**die Autobahn (e)**  
 to freeze **frieren**  
 freezing cold **bitterkalt**  
 French (language) **Französisch**  
 french fries **die Pommes (pl.)**  
 fresh **frisch**  
 Friday **der Freitag (e)**  
 fridge **der Kühlschrank(‘e)**  
 fried **gebraten**  
 friend **der Freund (e) (male),**  
**die Freundin (nen) (female)**  
 friendly **freundlich**  
 friendship book  
**das Poesiealbum (-alben)**  
 frog **der Frosch (‘e)**  
 from **aus, von**  
 from (... Euro) **ab (€ ...)**  
 from Melbourne  
**aus Melbourne**

from Switzerland  
**aus der Schweiz**  
 at/to the front **vorne**  
 fruit **die Frucht (‘e), das Obst (no pl.)**  
 fruit salad **der Obstsalat (e)**  
 full (of food) **satt**  
 fun **der Spaß (‘e)**  
 have fun! **viel Spaß!**  
 funny **lustig**  
 fur **das Fell (e)**  
 future **die Zukunft**

## G

game **das Spiel (e)**  
 games room **das Spielzimmer (-)**  
 garage **die Garage (n)**  
 garden **der Garten (‘-)**  
 community garden/allotment  
**der Schrebergarten (‘-)**  
 gateau **die Torte (n)**  
 gee! **Mensch!**  
 gee, I'm exhausted! **Mensch,**  
**bin ich kaputt!**  
 geography **die Geographie**  
 Geography (school  
 subject) **Erdkunde**  
 German (language) **Deutsch**  
 German class **die Deutschklasse (n)**  
 German jelly baby  
**das Gummibärchen (-)**  
 German Soccer Federation  
**Deutscher Fußballbund (DFB)**  
 German-speaking **deutschsprachig**  
 Germany **Deutschland**  
 to get **holen**  
 get well soon! **gute Besserung!**  
 to get up **aufstehen**  
 get up! **steht auf!**  
 gingerbread **der Lebkuchen (-)**  
 gingerbread heart  
**das Lebkuchenherz (en)**  
 girl **das Mädchen (-)**  
 giraffe **die Giraffe (n)**  
 to give **geben**  
 give me **gib mir**  
 gladly **gern**  
 glass **das Glas (‘er)**  
 glasses (spectacles) **die Brille (n)**  
 glove **der Handschuh (e)**  
 glue **der Klebstoff (e)**  
 glutton **der Vielfraß (‘e)**  
 to go (on foot) **gehen,**  
 (by car, train, etc.) **fahren**  
 to go away **weg|fahren**  
 go away! **hau ab!**  
 goggles **die Skibrille (n)**

goldfish **der Goldfisch (e)**  
 golf **Golf**  
 good **gut**  
   good idea! **gute Idee!**  
   good luck! **viel Glück!, Hals- und Beinbruch!**  
   good morning! **guten Morgen!**  
   good work! **gute Arbeit!**  
 goodbye! **auf Wiedersehen!**  
 grade (mark) **die Note (n)**  
 grandchild **das Enkelkind (er)**  
 grandfather **der Großvater (‘-)**  
 grandma (granny) **die Oma (s), die Omi (s)**  
 grandmother  
   **die Großmutter (‘-)**  
 grandpa **der Opa (s), der Opi (s)**  
 grandparents **die Großeltern (pl.)**  
 grape **die Traube (n)**  
 grapefruit **die Pampelmuse (n)**  
 grass **das Gras (‘er)**  
 great **klasse, prima, super, toll, herrlich**  
   that would be great! **das wäre toll!**  
 Greece **Griechenland**  
 greedy-guts **der Vielfraß (‘e)**  
 Greek (language) **Griechisch**  
 green **grün**  
 greeting **der Gruß (‘e)**  
 greeting card **die Karte (n)**  
 grey **grau**  
 groceries **die Lebensmittel (pl.)**  
 ground floor **das Erdgeschoss (-)**  
 group photo **das Gruppenfoto (s)**  
 to guess **raten**  
 group work **die Gruppenarbeit**  
 (have a) guess what this/that is!  
   **rate mal, was das ist!**  
 guest **der Gast (‘e)**  
 guesthouse **das Gästehaus (‘er)**  
 guinea pig  
   **das Meerschweinchen (-)**  
 guitar **die Gitarre (n)**  
 gummy bear (German jelly baby)  
   **das Gummibärchen (-)**  
 guy **der Typ (en)**  
 guys (informal) **die Jungs**  
 gymnasium **die Turnhalle (n)**  
 to do gymnastics **turnen**

## H

half **halb**  
   half past four **halb vier**  
 half-brother **der Halbbruder (‘-)**  
 half-sister **die Halbschwester (n)**

hallway **der Flur (en)**  
 ham **der Schinken (-)**  
 ham sandwich  
   **das Schinkenbrot (e)**  
 ham sausage **die Krakauer, die Schinkenwurst (‘e)**  
 hamburger **der Hamburger (-)**  
 hamster **der Hamster (-)**  
 hand **die Hand (‘e)**  
 (European) handball **Handball**  
 handball training  
   **das Handballtraining**  
 happy birthday! **herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag!**  
 happy Easter! **frohe Ostern!**  
 happy new year! **gutes neues Jahr und einen guten Rutsch!, prosit Neujahr!**  
 hardly **kaum**  
 hare **der Hase (n)**  
 harmless **harmlos**  
 hat **der Hut (‘e), die Mütze (n)**  
 to have **haben**  
   have some! **probier doch mal!**  
   have a nice day! **schönen Tag noch!**  
   have a nice weekend! **schönes Wochenende!**  
 to have (in a restaurant) **nehmen**  
 to have to (modal verb) **müssen**  
 hay **das Heu**  
 he **er**  
 head **der Kopf (‘e)**  
 headache **der Kopfschmerz (en)**  
 healthy **gesund**  
 heart **das Herz (en)**  
 to hear **hören**  
 heaven **der Himmel (-)**  
 heavy **schwer**  
 heavy goods vehicle/truck  
   **der LKW (Lastkraftwagen) (-)**  
 heavy metal (music) **Heavymetal**  
 hell **die Hölle (n)**  
 hello! **guten Tag!, grüß dich!**  
   (informal), **grüß Gott!** (southern Germany and Austria), **hallo!, moin!** (northern Germany), **servus!** (southern Germany and Austria), **Tag!**  
 help **die Hilfe (no pl.)**  
 to help **helfen, mithelfen**  
 her **sie; ihr/ihre/ihren**  
 here **hier**  
 here you are! **bitte schön!**  
 hey **he, Mensch, na**  
   hey, you two! **he, ihr Zwei!**  
 hi! **hi!, Morgen!, Tag!**

high school  
   (general) **die Hauptschule (n),**  
   (intermediate) **die Realschule (n),**  
   (advanced) **das Gymnasium (Gymnasien)**  
 to hike **wandern gehen**  
 him **ihn**  
 Hip-Hop (music) **hip hop**  
 hip, hip, hooray! **hoch soll er/sie leben!**  
 hippopotamus **das Nilpferd (e)**  
 History (school subject)  
   **Geschichte**  
 his **sein/seine/seinen**  
 hit parade **die Hitparade (n)**  
 hockey **Hockey**  
 holiday **der Feiertag (e), der Urlaub**  
 to take a holiday **Urlaub machen**  
 holidays **die Ferien (pl.)**  
 home **das Heim (e)**  
 at home **zu Hause**  
 (to go) home **nach Hause (gehen)**  
 to be homesick **Heimweh haben**  
 homesickness **das Heimweh**  
 homework **die Hausaufgabe (n)**  
 homey **gemütlich**  
 honey **der Honig (e)**  
 hoof **der Huf (e)**  
 hooray! **hurra!**  
 to hope **hoffen**  
 hopefully **hoffentlich**  
 horizontal (across) **waagrecht**  
 horn **das Horn (‘er)**  
 horse **das Pferd (e)**  
 hot **heiß**  
 it is hot **es ist heiß**  
 hot chips **die Pommes (pl.)**  
 hot chocolate **der Kakao (s)**  
 hour **die Stunde (n)**  
 house **das Haus (‘er)**  
 house-trained **stubenrein**  
 how? **wie?**  
   how are you?  
   **wie geht’s? (informal), wie geht es Ihnen? (formal)**  
   how does it taste?  
   **(wie) schmeckt’s?**  
   how long? **wie lange?**  
   how many? **wie viele?**  
   how much? **wie viel?**  
   how much does ... cost?  
   **was kostet/kosten ...?**  
   how much is it?  
   **was macht das?**  
   how old are you?  
   **wie alt bist du? (informal)**

how so? **und wie denn?**  
how was ...? **wie war ...?**  
how were the holidays?  
**wie waren die Ferien?**

hundred **hundert**  
hunger **der Hunger**  
to be hungry **Hunger haben**  
hurry up! **mach(t) schnell!**  
husband **der Ehemann** (‘er)  
my/her husband **mein/ihr Mann**

## I

I **ich**

I am ... years old **ich bin ... Jahre alt**

I am called ... **ich heiÙe ...**

I am good **mir geht’s gut**

I am finished **Ich bin fertig.**

I am looking forward to ...  
**ich freue mich auf ...**

I am sorry! **es tut mir Leid!,  
Entschuldigung!**

I can ... **ich kann ...**

I can’t wait **ich bin schon  
gespannt, da bin ich ja  
gespannt**

I come from ... **ich komme  
aus ...**

I do ... **ich mache ...**

I do though! **ich aber schon!**

I don’t! **ich nicht!**

I don’t know **ich weiß (es)  
nicht**

I go ... **ich gehe ...**

I play ... **ich spiele ...**

I see! **ach so!**

ice hockey **Eishockey**

ice-cold **eisgekühlt**

ice-cream **das Eis**

to ice-skate **Schlittschuh fahren/  
laufen**

ice-skating **das  
Schlittschuhfahren/-laufen**

idea **die Ahnung (en),  
die Idee (n)**

good idea! **gute Idee!**

no idea! **keine Ahnung!**

ideal **ideal**

if **wenn**

immediately **gleich**

important **wichtig**

in **auf, in, im**

in and around the house  
**im und um Haus**

in any case **sowieso**

in comparison **im Vergleich**

in fashion **im Trend**  
in German **auf Deutsch**  
in German class  
**im Deutschunterricht**

in the schoolyard  
**auf dem Schulhof**

in the **im**

in the/one’ arms **im Arm**

in the choir **im Chor**

in the folder **im Ordner**

in the/one’s hand **in der Hand**

in the middle **in der Mitte**

incorrect **falsch**

incredibly **wahnsinnig**

Indonesian (language)

**Indonesisch**

to inform **informieren**

information **die Information (en)**

Information Technology (IT)

(school subject) **Informatik**

ingenious! **genial!**

inner city **die Innenstadt** (‘e)

insect **das Insekt (en)**

instrument **das Instrument (e)**

intelligent **intelligent**

to be interested in

**sich interessieren für**

interesting **interessant**

international **international**

internet **das Internet** (no pl.)

interview **das Interview (s)**

to interview **interviewen**

invited **eingeladen**

invitation **die Einladung (en)**

is **ist** (from **sein**)

isn’t it? **ne?**

isn’t that/it so? **oder?**

isn’t that true? **stimmt das?,  
nicht wahr?**

island **die Insel (n)**

Israel **Israel**

it **es, ihn/sie/es**

it tastes good! **das schmeckt!**

it is ... **es ist ...**

it is cold **es ist kalt**

it is cool **es ist kühl**

it is cloudy **es ist wolzig**

it is fine **es ist schön**

it is hot **es ist heiß**

it is raining **es regnet**

it is snowing **es schneit**

it is stormy **es ist stürmisch**

it is sunny **es ist sonnig**

it is warm **es ist warm**

it is windy **es ist windig**

Italian (adj.) **italienisch**

Italian (language) **Italienisch**

Italy **Italien**

its **sein/seine/seinen** (masc.)

## J

jaguar **der Jaguar (e)**

jacket **die Jacke (n)**

jam **die Marmelade (n),  
die Konfitüre (n)**

January **der Januar**

Japanese (adj.) **japanisch**

Japanese (language) **Japanisch**

Jazz (music) **Jazz**

jeans **die Jeans** (pl.)

(German) jelly baby

**das Gummibärchen** (–)

jersey **das Trikot (s)**

(baby) Jesus **das Christkind**

job **der Job (s)** (informal)

to jog **joggen**

jogging **Joggen**

to join **verbinden**

join! **verbinde!**

join in! **mach mit!**

journalist **der Journalist (en)** (male),  
**die Journalistin (nen)** (female)

journey **die Fahrt** (–)

judo **Judo**

juice **der Saft** (‘e)

July **der Juli**

jumper **der Pulli (s),  
der Pullover** (–)

June **der Juni**

just **erst, gleich**

just my type! **genau mein Typ!**

## K

kangaroo **das Känguru (s)**

karate **Karate**

ketchup **der Ketchup**

kind **lieb**

kind regards **liebe Grüße**

kind (sort, type) **die Art (en)**

kindergarten **der Kindergarten** (‘–)

kiss **der Kuß (Küsse)**

to kiss **küssen**

kitchen **die Küche (n)**

kitchen sink **der Spülbecken** (–)

kitten **das Kätzchen** (–)

knee **das Knie** (–)

to know **kennen**

koala **der Koala (s)**

## L

lamp **die Lampe (n)**

to land **landen**

large **groß**  
 too large **zu groß**  
 last **letzt**  
 the last **der/die Letzte**  
 late **spät**  
 later **später**  
 later on **nachträglich**  
 Latin (language) **Latein**  
 lazy **faul**  
 leopard **der Leopard (n)**  
 to learn **lernen**  
 learning tips **Lerntipps**  
 leather jacket **die Lederjacke (n)**  
 Lebanese **libanesisch**  
 lederhosen **die Lederhose (n)**  
 left **links**  
 lemon **die Zitrone (n)**  
 lemonade **die Limonade (n)**  
 lesson **der Unterricht (e)**  
 let's go! **na, los!**  
 let's go in! **gehen wir mal rein!**  
 let's see **das wollen wir doch mal sehen**  
 letter **der Brief (e)**  
 lettuce **der Salat (e)**  
 Liechtenstein **Liechtenstein**  
 light **das Licht (er)**  
 light (*adj.*) **hell**  
 light blue **hellblau**  
 to have lightning **blitzen**  
 there is thunder and lightning **es donnert und blitzt**  
 to like **mögen**  
 I like chocolate **ich mag Schokolade**  
 I would like to eat chocolate **ich möchte Schokolade essen**  
 to like doing (something) **gern machen**  
 I like to play ... **Ich spiele gern ...**  
 I like to sing ... **Ich singe gern ...**  
 likewise! **gleichfalls!**  
 lion **der Löwe (n)**  
 to listen in **reinhören**  
 to listen to **hören**  
 listen! **hör mal/zu!**  
 I listen to music **Ich höre Musik**  
 little **klein**  
 too little **zu klein**  
 a little **ein bisschen**  
 to live **wohnen**  
 liverwurst **die Leberwurst (¨e)**  
 living room **das Wohnzimmer (-)**

to look (like) **aussehen**  
 (have a) look! **guck(t) mal!**  
 to look after **aufpassen**  
 to look for **suchen**  
 to look forward to **sich freuen, gespannt sein**  
 I look forward to ... **Ich freue mich auf ...**  
 he/she looks forward to ... **er/sie freut sich auf ...**  
 long **lang**  
 lost **verloren**  
 loud **laut**  
 to love **lieben**  
 lovely **schön**  
 luck **das Glück**  
 best of luck! **toi, toi, toi!**  
 lucky **glücklich**  
 to be lucky **Glück/Schwein haben**  
 lucky beggar **der Glückspilz**  
 lunch **das Mittagessen (-)**  
 to have lunch **lunchen**  
 Luxembourg **Luxemburg**

## M

mad **böse**  
 madness **der Wahnsinn**  
 mail **die Post**  
 main course **das Hauptgericht (e)**  
 to make **machen, (crafts) basteln**  
 man **der Herr (en), der Mann (¨er)**  
 oh man! **oh Mann!**  
 many **viele**  
 map **die Karte (n)**  
 marble cake **der Marmorkuchen (n)**  
 marble cake (German style) **der Guglhupf (e)**  
 March **der März**  
 mark (grade) **die Note (n)**  
 to mark **markieren**  
 marketplace **der Marktplatz (¨e)**  
 married **verheiratet**  
 masculine **das Maskulinum**  
 Maths **Mathe(matik)**  
 May **der Mai**  
 may I ...? **darf ich ...?**  
 maybe **vielleicht**  
 mayonnaise **die Majonäse**  
 maypole **der Maibaum (¨e)**  
 me **mich, mir**  
 me too **ich auch**

meal **das Essen (no pl.)**  
 enjoy your meal! **guten Appetit!, (formal) Mahlzeit!**  
 mean **gemein**  
 meat **das Fleisch (no pl.)**  
 meerkat **das Erdmännchen (-)**  
 to meet **treffen**  
 melted **geschmolzen**  
 menu **die Speisekarte (n)**  
 merry Christmas! **frohe Weihnachten!**  
 metre **der Meter (-)**  
 Mexican **mexikanisch**  
 midday **der Mittag (e)**  
 middle **die Mitte (n)**  
 midnight **die Mitternacht (¨e)**  
 milk **die Milch**  
 mineral water **das Mineralwasser**  
 minus **minus**  
 minute **die Minute (n)**  
 miserable **unglücklich, miserabel**  
 to miss (somebody/ something) **vermissen**  
 Miss ... **Frau ...**  
 Miss! **Frau!**  
 missing **fehlend**  
 mobile phone **das Handy (s)**  
 mobile phone number **die Handynummer (n)**  
 modal verb **das Modalverb (en)**  
 modern **modern**  
 Monday **der Montag (e)**  
 month **der Monat (e)**  
 more **mehr**  
 morning **der Morgen (-), der Vormittag (e)**  
 morning! **Morgen!**  
 in the morning **morgens**  
 ... the most ... **am liebsten**  
 most of the time, mostly **meistens**  
 motorbike **das Motorrad (¨er)**  
 mountain **der Berg (e)**  
 in the mountains **in den Bergen**  
 mother **die Mutter (¨-)**  
 mouse **die Maus (¨e)**  
 little mouse **das Mäuschen (-)**  
 movie **der Film (e)**  
 to the movies **ins Kino**  
 Mr ... **Herr ...**  
 Mrs ..., Ms ... **Frau ...**  
 much **viel**  
 much love on your birthday! **alles Liebe zum Geburtstag!**

muesli **das Müsli (s)**  
 multicoloured **bunt**  
 mum, mummy **die Mama (s),  
 die Mami (s)**  
 Munich **München**  
 museum **das Museum (en)**  
 music **die Musik (en)**  
 Music (school subject) **Musik**  
 must (*modal verb*) **müssen**  
 mustard **der Senf (e)**  
 my **mein/meine/meinen**  
 my birthday is on ... **mein  
 Geburtstag ist am ...**  
 my name is ... **ich bin ...**  
 myself **mich**

## N

name **der Name (n)**  
 national costumes  
**die Trachten (pl.)**  
 (German) national league  
**die Bundesliga**  
 naturally **natürlich**  
 nearly **fast**  
 necklace **die Halskette (n)**  
 to need **brauchen**  
 nephew **der Neffe (n)**  
 netball **Korbball**  
 the Netherlands **die Niederlande**  
 never **nie, nimmer**  
 never again **nimmermehr**  
 neuter (case) **das Neutrum**  
 new **neu**  
 newspaper **die Zeitung (en)**  
 New Year's Eve **Silvester**  
 New Zealand **Neuseeland**  
 next to **neben**  
 next to each other  
**nebeneinander**  
 nice **lieb, nett**  
 niece **die Nichte (-n)**  
 night **die Nacht (e)**  
 nine **neun**  
 no **nein**  
 no, not any (*indefinite article*)  
**kein/keine/keinen**  
 no idea! **keine Ahnung!**  
 no problem! **kein Problem!**  
 noise **der Krach (e)**  
 noodle **die Nudel (n)**  
 Norway **Norwegen**  
 not **nicht**  
 no (not any) longer **nicht mehr**  
 not me! **ich nicht!**  
 not necessarily **nicht  
 unbedingt**

not so good **nicht so gut**  
 not yet **noch nicht**  
 note **die Notiz (en)**  
 notepad **der Notizblock (e)**  
 nothing **nichts**  
 nothing! **gar nichts!**  
 nothing much **nichts  
 Besonderes**  
 notice (in newspaper)  
**die Anzeige (n)**  
 noticeboard **das schwarzes  
 (schwarzen) Brett (er)**  
 noun **das Nomen (-)**  
 November **der November**  
 now **jetzt, gleich, nun**  
 number **die Nummer (n),  
 ie Zahl (en)**  
 nutcracker **der Nussknacker (-)**

## O

ocean **der Ozean (e)**  
 ... o'clock ... **Uhr**  
 October **der Oktober**  
 of course! **ja, klar!**  
 to offer **bieten**  
 often **oft**  
 office **das Büro (s)**  
 oh **ach, oh**  
 oh! **ach!**  
 oh dear! **oh weh!, ach du  
 Schreck!, oh weia!**  
 oh my god! **oh Gott!**  
 oh, there you are! **ach, da seid  
 ihr ja!**  
 OK **O.K., in Ordnung**  
 Oktoberfest **das Oktoberfest (e)**  
 old **alt**  
 old-fashioned **altmodisch**  
 Olympic Games **die  
 Olympischen Spiele**  
 on **am, auf, im**  
 on the computer  
**am Computer**  
 on television **im Fernsehen**  
 on the internet **im Internet**  
 on this page/side **auf diese  
 Seite**  
 once again **noch einmal**  
 one (I) **man**  
 one (number) **eins**  
 one (*indefinite article*)  
**ein/eine/einen**  
 one another **einander**  
 only **nur**  
 only child **das Einzelkind (er)**  
 opal **der Opal (e)**

to open **aufmachen**  
 open the door!  
**mach(t) die Tür auf!**  
 open your books! **macht eure  
 Bücher auf!**  
 opposite **das Gegenteil (e)**  
 or **oder**  
 orange (*colour*) **orange**  
 orange (*fruit*) **die Orange (n)**  
 orange juice **der Orangensaft (e)**  
 to organise **organisieren**  
 ostrich **der Strauß (en)**  
 other **ander**  
 otherwise **sonst**  
 otter **der Otter (-)**  
 ought to **sollen**  
 our **unser/unsere/unsere**  
 out of the house **aus dem Haus**  
 outside **draußen**  
 over that **darüber**  
 over there **da drüben**  
 overcast **wolkig**  
 owl **die Eule (n)**  
 own **eigen/eigene**

## P

page **die Seite (n)**  
 pair **das Paar (e)**  
 don't panic! **keine Panik!**  
 panther **der Panther (-)**  
 pants **die Hose (n)**  
 pantyhose **die Strumpfhose (n)**  
 paper **das Papier**  
 Paraguay **Paraguay**  
 pardon? **wie bitte?**  
 parents **die Eltern (pl.)**  
 park **der Park (s)**  
 to park **parken**  
 parrot **der Papagei (en)**  
 partner **der Partner (-) (male),  
 die Partnerin (nen) (female)**  
 party **die Party (s)**  
 to a party **zu einer Party**  
 past (the hour) **nach**  
 twenty past four **zwanzig  
 nach vier**  
 pasta **die Nudel (n)**  
 pastry **der Teig (e)**  
 to pat **streicheln**  
 pattern **das Muster (-)**  
 paw **die Pfote (n), die Tatze (n)  
 (of a big cat)**  
 to pay attention **aufpassen**  
 pay attention! **pass(t) auf!**  
 pay attention, please!  
**aufpassen, bitte!**

PE **Sport**  
pear **die Birne (n)**  
pedestrian precinct  
**die Fußgängerzone (n)**  
(ballpoint) pen **der Kuli (s)**  
(coloured) pencil **der Buntstift (e)**  
(grey-lead) pencil **der Bleistift (e),  
der Stift (e)**  
pencil case **das Mäppchen (-)**  
pencil sharpener **der Spitzer (-)**  
people **die Leute (pl.)**  
pepper **der Pfeffer**  
per **pro**  
per piece **pro Stück**  
perfect **perfekt**  
perfume **das Parfüm (s)**  
perhaps **vielleicht**  
to permit **erlauben**  
person **die Person (en)**  
to persuade **überreden**  
pet **das Haustier (e)**  
pet food **das Futter (-),  
das Tierfutter**  
pet name **der Haustiernamen (n)**  
pet owner  
**das Herrchen (-) (male),  
das Frauchen (-) (female)**  
pet shop **die Tierhandlung (en),  
die Zoohandlung (en)**  
to phone **anrufen**  
photo **das Foto (s)**  
photo album **das Fotoalbum  
(Fotoalben)**  
photographer  
**der Fotograf (en) (male),  
die Fotografin (nen) (female)**  
to photograph **fotografieren**  
physics **Physik**  
piano **das Klavier (e)**  
picture **das Bild (er)**  
to take a picture **fotografieren**  
piece (of cake, fruit) **das Stück (e)**  
piece of paper **der Zettel (-)**  
pied piper **der Rattenfänger**  
pig **das Schwein (e)**  
pink **rosa**  
pizza **die Pizza (s)**  
to plan **planen**  
to play **spielen**  
to play a lot of sport  
**viel Sport treiben**  
I like to play ...  
**ich spiele gern ...**  
player **der Spieler (n) (male),  
die Spielerin (nen) (female)**  
please **bitte**

pleased to meet you! **freut mich,  
euch kennenzulernen!**  
plural **Plural**  
plus **plus**  
pocket **die Tasche (n)**  
poem **das Gedicht (e)**  
poisonous **giftig**  
Poland **Polen**  
police **die Polizei**  
poodle **der Pudel (-)**  
pop (grandfather) **der Opi (s)**  
pop music **die Popmusik**  
popular **beliebt, populär**  
poppy seed cake  
**der Mohnkuchen (-)**  
pork sausage  
**die Fleischwurst (‘e)**  
portion **die Portion (en)**  
post (mail) **die Post**  
postcard **die Postkarte (n)**  
poster **das Poster (s)**  
potato **die Kartoffel (n)**  
potato cake  
**der Kartoffelpuffer (-)**  
potato salad  
**der Kartoffelsalat (e)**  
practice **das Training (s)**  
to practise **trainieren**  
to prepare **vorbereiten**  
preposition **die Präposition (en)**  
present **das Geschenk (e)**  
to present **präsentieren**  
pretzel **die Brezel (n)**  
preview **die Vorschau (en)**  
primary school  
**die Grundschule (n)**  
private life **das Privatleben (-)**  
pro(fessional) **der Profi (s)**  
problem **das Problem (e)**  
no problem! **kein Problem!**  
product **das Produkt (e)**  
profile **das Profil (e)**  
project **das Projekt (e)**  
pronoun **das Pronomen (-)**  
proverb **das Sprichwort (‘er)**  
punctual **pünktlich**  
to promote **Werbung machen**  
to pull **ziehen**  
puppy **das Hündchen (-)**  
purple **lila**  
to put **stellen**  
put the chairs up! **stell(t) die  
Stühle hoch!**  
put your hand(s) up! **melde  
dich! meldet euch!**  
puzzle **das Rätsel (-)**  
pyjamas **der Pyjama (s)**

## Q

quality **die Qualität (en)**  
quarter **das Viertel (-)**  
quarter past/to ...  
**Viertel nach/vor ...**  
question **die Frage (n)**  
question-and-answer game  
**das Frage- und Antwortspiel (en)**  
quick **schnell**  
quiet **ruhig**  
quiet, please! **ruhe, bitte!**  
quite **ganz, ziemlich**  
quiz **das Quiz (-)**

## R

rabbit **das Kaninchen (-)**  
rain **der Regen**  
raincoat **der Regenmantel (‘-)**  
to rain **regnen**  
it is raining **es regnet**  
rap (music) **Rap**  
rat **die Ratte (n)**  
rather **lieber**  
rather than **lieber als**  
rather (quite) **ziemlich**  
raw **roh**  
to read **lesen**  
reading page **die Leseseite (n)**  
ready **fertig**  
really **echt, wirklich**  
really? **wirklich?**  
really great **richtig toll**  
to receive **bekommen**  
recess **die Pause (n)**  
recipe **das Rezept (e)**  
red **rot**  
red cabbage **der Rotkohl (e)**  
reindeer **das Rentier (e)**  
to relax **relaxen**  
Religious Education **Religion/Reli**  
to remain **bleiben**  
to repair **reparieren**  
to repeat (a phrase) **wiederholen,  
(a year at school) sitzenbleiben**  
repeat! **wiederhole!**  
report card **das Zeugnis (se)**  
repulsive **widerlich**  
restaurant **das Restaurant (s)**  
to return **zurückkommen**  
revolting **ekelhaft, eklig, widerlich**  
Rhenish (from Rhineland)  
**rheinländisch**  
rhinoceros **das Nashorn (‘er)**  
rhythmic gymnastics **die  
rythmische Sportgymnastik**

rice **der Reis**  
 to ride **fahren**  
 to ride a bike **Rad fahren**  
 to ride a horse **reiten**  
 to ride a skateboard **Skateboard fahren**  
 right **rechts**, (*correct*) **richtig**  
 that's right! **stimmt!**  
 R'n'B (music) **R'n'B**  
 roast chicken **das Hähnchen (-)**  
 roast pork  
**der Schweinebraten (-)**  
 rock (music) **Rock**  
 role-play **das Rollenspiel (e)**  
 romantic movie  
**der Liebesfilm (e)**  
 romantic song (European style) **der Schlager (-)**  
 roof **das Dach (er)**  
 rooster **der Hahn (er)**  
 rubbish **der Müll (-)**  
 to take out the rubbish  
**der Müll rausbringen**  
 rugby (Union or League) **Rugby**  
 ruler **das Lineal (e)**  
 to run **laufen**  
 to run away **weglaufen**  
 running **das Rennen**

## S

sachertorte (rich Austrian chocolate cake)  
**die Sachertorte (n)**  
 sad **traurig**  
 safe **sicher**  
 Saint Martin **Sankt Martin**  
 Saint Nicholas **Sankt Nikolaus, der Nikolaus (er)**  
 salad **der Salat (e)**  
 salami **die Salami (s)**  
 salami roll  
**das Salamibrötchen (-)**  
 salt **das Salz**  
 salty **salzig**  
 same **gleich**  
 sandwich **das Sandwich (e), das belegtes Brot**  
 Santa Claus  
**der Weihnachtsmann (er)**  
 Saturday **der Samstag (e)**  
 sauce **die Soße (n)**  
 sauerkraut (pickled cabbage)  
**das Sauerkraut**  
 sausage **die Bockwurst (e), die Wurst (e)**  
 sausage with curry sauce  
**die Currywurst (e)**

Saxon (dialect) **Sächsisch**  
 saxophone **das Saxophon (e)**  
 to say **sagen**  
 saying **das Sprichwort (er)**  
 scarcely **knapp**  
 scarf **der Schal (s)**  
 schnitzel  
**das (Wiener) Schnitzel (-)**  
 school **die Schule (n)**  
 school bag **die Schultasche (n)**  
 school band **die Schulband (s)**  
 school concert  
**das Schulkonzert (e)**  
 school disco **das Schuldisko (s)**  
 school formal/prom  
**der Abiball (e)**  
 school magazine  
**die Schülerzeitung (en)**  
 school subject  
**das Schulfach (er)**  
 school uniform  
**die Schuluniform (en)**  
 school website  
**die Schulwebsite (s)**  
 school year **das Schuljahr (e)**  
 school yard **der Schulhof (e)**  
 Science (school subject)  
**Naturwissenschaft (en)**  
 scissors **die Schere (n)**  
 sea **das Meer (e)**  
 by the sea **am Meer (e)**  
 sea horse **das Seepferdchen (-)**  
 season **die Jahreszeit (en)**  
 seaweed **die Seealge (n)**  
 secondary school *see* **high school**  
 see you later! **bis später!, tschüs!, tschüssi!**  
 see you soon! **bis bald!**  
 to send **schicken, senden**  
 to send a text message (SMS)  
**texten**  
 sent **versendet**  
 sentence **der Satz (e)**  
 separable **trennbar**  
 separated **getrennt**  
 September **der September**  
 seriously? **im Ernst?**  
 serve **die Portion (en)**  
 service **der Service (-)**  
 to set off **losfahren**  
 to set the table **den Tisch decken**  
 that's settled! **abgemacht!**  
 seven **sieben**  
 shared accommodation group  
**die Wohngemeinschaft (en)**  
 sharp **scharf**  
 she **sie**

shelf **das Regal (e)**  
 shell necklace  
**die Muschelkette (n)**  
 to shine **scheinen**  
 ship **das Schiff (e)**  
 shirt **das Hemd (en)**  
 shoe **der Schuh (e)**  
 to shop **ein|kaufen**  
 shopping **das Shopping (no pl.)**  
 shopping centre **das Einkaufszentrum (en)**  
 shopping list  
**die Einkaufsliste (n)**  
 short, shortly **kurz**  
 shorts **die Shorts (pl.)**  
 should (*modal verb*) **sollen**  
 shower **die Dusche (n)**  
 show-off **der Angeber (-)**  
 shy **scheu**  
 siblings **die Geschwister (pl.)**  
 sick **krank**  
 side **die Seite (n)**  
 simple, simply **einfach**  
 simply great **einfach klasse**  
 since **seit**  
 to sing **singen**  
 ich singe im Chor **I sing in a choir**  
 single-family house  
**das Einfamilienhaus (er)**  
 singular (*gramm.*) **der Singular (kitchen) sink der Spülbecken (-)**  
 Sir! **Herr!**  
 sister **die Schwester (n)**  
 sister school  
**die Schwesterschule (n)**  
 to sit **sitzen**  
 to sit down **sich setzen**  
 sit down! **setz dich! / setzt euch!**  
 six **sechs**  
 skateboard **das Skateboard (s)**  
 to ride a skateboard  
**Skateboard fahren**  
 to ski **Ski fahren/laufen**  
 skiing **das Skifahren**  
 skin **die Haut (e)**  
 skirt **der Rock (e)**  
 sky **der Himmel (-)**  
 to sleep **schlafen**  
 (did you) sleep well?  
**gut geschlafen?**  
 sleeping bag **der Schlafsack (e)**  
 slice **die Scheibe (n)**  
 sliced cold meat  
**der Aufschnitt (no pl.)**  
 slipper **der Hausschuh (e)**

slow, slowly **langsam**  
 small **klein**  
   too small **zu klein**  
 to smell **riechen**  
 to smoke **rauchen**  
 SMS **die SMS (-)**  
 snack **der Imbiss (e)**  
 snack stand/stall  
   **die Imbissbude (n)**  
 snake **die Schlange (n)**  
 snow **der Schnee**  
 to snow **schneien**  
   it is snowing **es schneit**  
 snowball **der Schneeball (‘e)**  
 snowboard **das Snowboard (s)**  
 to snowboard **snowboarden**  
 snowboarding **das Snowboarden**  
 snowflake **die Schneeflocke (n)**  
 snowman **der Schneemann (‘er)**  
 so **so**  
   so far **bis jetzt**  
   so long! **tschau!**  
   so viel **so much**  
   so viele **so many**  
   so what? **na, und?**  
 soccer **Fußball**  
 soccer ball **der Fußball (‘e)**  
 soccer jersey **das (Fußball)**  
   **Trikot (s)**  
 soccer training  
   **das Fußballtraining (s)**  
 sock **die Socke (n)**  
 Social Science (school subject)  
   **Sozialwissenschaft (en)**  
 Social Studies (school subject)  
   **Sozialkunde (no pl.)**  
 sofa **das Sofa (s)**  
 soft **weich**  
 soft toy **das Kuscheltier (e)**  
 something **etwas**  
   something else? **sonst noch**  
   **etwas?**  
 sometimes **manchmal**  
 son **der Sohn (‘e)**  
 song **das Lied (er)**  
 soon **bald**  
 sorry! **Entschuldigung!**  
   I'm sorry! **tut mir Leid!**  
 sort (type) **die Art (en)**  
 sour (taste) **sauer**  
 souvenir **das Souvenir (e)**  
 space (area) **der Platz (‘e)**  
 spaghetti **die Spaghetti (s)**  
 Spain **Spanien**  
 sparkling wine **der Sekt (e)**  
 to speak **sprechen**

speaking tips **Sprachtipps**  
 speciality **die Spezialität (en)**  
 spicy **scharf**  
 spider **die Spinne (n)**  
 sport **der Sport**  
 Sport (school subject) **Sport, PE**  
 sports carnival **das Sportfest (e)**  
 sports day **der Sporttag (e)**  
 sports gear **das Sportzeug (no pl.)**  
 sports hall **die Sporthalle (n)**  
 sports teacher  
   **der Sportlehrer (-) (male),**  
   **die Sportlehrerin (nen) (female)**  
 sportsfield **das Spielfeld (er)**  
 sport star **der Sportstar (s)**  
 sporty **sportlich**  
 spot on! **genau!, ganz genau!**  
 spotted (pattern) **gepunktet**  
 spring **der Frühling (e)**  
 squirrel **das Eichhörnchen (en)**  
 stairs **die Treppe (n)**  
 stand ...! **stell dich/stellt euch ...!**  
 stand up! **steh(t) auf!**  
 star **der Stern (e)**  
 to start **beginnen**  
 stay **der Aufenthalt (e)**  
 to stay **bleiben**  
 to stay away **weg|bleiben**  
 stepbrother **der Stiefbruder (‘-)**  
 stepmother **die Stiefmutter (‘-)**  
 stepfather **der Stiefvater (‘-)**  
 stepsister **die Stiefschwester (n)**  
 to stick **kleben**  
 still **(immer) noch**  
 stop that! **nun hört aber auf!**  
 storey (of a building)  
   **der Stock (‘e), das Stockwerk (e)**  
 stormy **stürmisch**  
 it is stormy **es ist stürmisch**  
 stove **der Herd(e)**  
 strange **komisch**  
 straight away **gleich**  
 straw star **der Strohstern (e)**  
 street **die Straße (n)**  
 strict **streng**  
 striped (pattern) **gestreift**  
 to stroll **spazieren**  
 structure **die Struktur**  
 student  
   (school) **der Schüler (-) (male),**  
   **die Schülerin (nen) (female);**  
   (university) **der Student (en)**  
   (male), **die Studentin (nen)**  
   (female)  
 study (room in a house)  
   **das Arbeitszimmer (-)**

stupid **blöd, doof**  
 subject (school) **das Fach (‘er),**  
   **das Thema (s)**  
 suburb **der Vorort (en)**  
 sure! **klar!**  
 survey **die Umfrage**  
 sugar **der Zucker**  
 sugar almond  
   **die Zuckermandel (n)**  
 suitcase **der Koffer (-)**  
 summer **der Sommer (-)**  
 sun **die Sonne (n)**  
   it is sunny **es ist sonnig**  
   the sun is shining **die Sonne**  
   **scheint**  
 sunglasses **die Sonnenbrille (n)**  
 Sunday **der Sonntag (e)**  
 super **super, toll**  
 to be supposed to **sollen**  
 sure **sicher, klar**  
   sure! **klar!**  
   sure thing! **doch!**  
 to surf **surfen**  
 surfing **Surfen**  
 surname **der Familienname (n)**  
 surprise **die Überraschung (en)**  
 to surprise **überraschen**  
 survey **die Umfrage (n)**  
 sushi **das Sushi**  
 sweet **süß**  
 to swim **schwimmen**  
 swimming **Schwimmen**  
 Switzerland **die Schweiz**

## T

table **der Tisch (e)**  
 table tennis **Tischtennis**  
 tail **der Schwanz (‘e)**  
 take care! **mach's gut!**  
 take care of yourself! **pass auf**  
   **Dich auf!**  
 to take **nehmen**  
 to take a photograph  
   **photographieren**  
 to take out the rubbish **den Müll**  
   **rausbringen**  
 to take time **dauern**  
 to taste **schmecken**  
   does that taste  
   good? **schmeckt's?**  
   how does it taste?  
   **wie schmeckt's?**  
   it tastes good! **das schmeckt!**  
 tea **der Tee (s)**  
 teacher **der Lehrer (-) (male),**  
   **die Lehrerin (nen) (female)**

teacher book  
**das Lehrerhandbuch** (‘er)  
team **das Team** (s)  
team game **das Teamspiel** (e)  
team leader  
**der Teamleiter** (-) (*male*),  
**die Teamleiterin** (nen) (*female*)  
techno music **Techno**  
techno fan **das Technofan**  
teddy bear **der Teddybär** (en)  
to telephone **telefonieren** (mit)  
telephone call/conversation  
**das Telefongespräch** (e)  
telephone number  
**die Telefonnummer** (n)  
to tell **sagen**  
tell me ... **sag mal ...**  
ten **zehn**  
tennis **Tennis**  
test **der Test** (s)  
test of courage **die Mutprobe** (n)  
text message **der Text** (e),  
**die SMS** (-)  
textbook **das Kursbuch** (‘er)  
than **als**  
thank you, thanks **danke**  
thank goodness! **Gott sei Dank!**  
thank you! **vielen Dank!**  
thank you very much! **danke schön!**  
that (*thing*) **das**  
that comes to ... **das macht ...**  
that costs ... **das kostet ...**  
that is ... **das ist ...**  
that would be great! **das wäre toll!**  
that (*conjunction*) **daß**  
the **der** (*masc.*), **die** (*fem. & pl.*),  
**das** (*neut.*)  
them **sie**  
then **dann, denn**  
their **sein/seine/seinen**  
there **da, dort**  
there is ... **es gibt ...**  
there you are! **da seid ihr ja!**  
these **diese**  
they **sie**  
thin **dünn**  
to think (about) **denken** (an)  
I will think of you! **ich werde an Dich denken!**  
thirst **der Durst**  
to be thirsty **Durst haben**  
this **diese**  
three **drei**  
to throw **werfen**

to thunder **donnern**  
there is thunder and lightning **es donnert und blitzt**  
thunderstorm **das Gewitter** (-)  
there is a thunder storm  
**es gibt Gewitter**  
Thursday **der Donnerstag** (e)  
ticket **die Karte** (n)  
to tidy up **aufräumen, (in Ordnung) bringen**  
tiger **der Tiger** (-)  
till **bis**  
till Monday! **bis Montag!**  
time **die Zeit** (en)  
on time **pünktlich**  
what time is it? **wie spät ist es?, wie viel Uhr ist es?**  
timetable **der Stundenplan** (‘e)  
timid **scheu**  
tired **müde**  
to **auf, in, nach, vor, zu**  
to go to the toilet **auf die Toilette gehen**  
to the cinema **ins Kino**  
to Germany **nach Deutschland**  
to Vienna **nach Wien**  
ten to three **zehn vor drei**  
to (sports) training **zum Training**  
to (the) school **zur Schule**  
toast **der Toast** (s)  
today **heute**  
today is the ... (date) **heute ist der ... (Datum)**  
together **zusammen**  
toilet **die Toilette** (n)  
to go to the toilet **auf die Toilette gehen**  
tomato **die Tomate** (n)  
tomato sauce  
**die Tomatensoße** (n)  
tomorrow **morgen**  
tongue-twister  
**der Zungenbrecher** (-)  
tonight **heute Abend**  
too **auch** (*also*), **zu**  
tooth **der Zahn** (‘e)  
top **das Top**  
topic **das Thema** (Themen)  
torte **die Torte** (n)  
totally **total**  
totally sick **total abgefahren**  
to that (in addition) **dazu**  
tourism **der Tourismus**  
tourist **der Tourist** (en) (*male*),  
**die Touristin** (nen) (*female*)  
towards **zu, nach**

town hall **das Rathaus**  
Trabant (East German car)  
**der Trabant** (en)  
tracksuit **der Trainingsanzug** (‘e)  
trade **das Handwerk**  
train **der Zug** (‘e)  
train line (rapid local) **die S-bahn (Schnellbahn)** (en)  
train station **der Bahnhof** (‘e)  
train (underground) **die U-bahn (Untergrundbahn)** (en)  
to train **trainieren**  
trainer (sneaker) **der Turnschuh** (e)  
training **das Training** (s)  
tram **die Straßenbahn** (en)  
to translate **übersetzen**  
transport **das Verkehrsmittel** (-)  
to travel **reisen**  
to travel by (mode of transport)  
**fahren**  
trip **die Reise** (n)  
trousers **die Hose** (n)  
truck/heavy goods vehicle  
**der LKW (Lastkraftwagen)** (-)  
true **wahr**  
true! **stimmt!**  
trumpet **die Trompete** (n)  
trunk (of elephant) **der Rüssel** (-)  
trusting **zutraulich**  
to try **probieren**  
try some! **probier doch mal!**  
T-shirt **das T-Shirt** (s)  
Tuesday **der Dienstag** (e)  
Turkey **die Türkei**  
Turkish **türkisch**  
turn the light on/off! **mach(t) das Licht an/aus!**  
tusk **der Hauer** (-)  
twelve **zwölf**  
twenty **zwanzig**  
two **zwei**  
type **die Art** (en), (*of person*)  
**der Typ** (en)  
type of music **die Musikarte** (n)  
type of sausage **die Wurstsorte** (n)  
typical **typisch**

## U

ugh! **igitt!, pfui!**  
ugly **hässlich**  
umlaut **der Umlaut** (e)  
unbelievably **unglaublich**  
uncle **der Onkel** (-)  
under **unter**  
underground train **die U-bahn (Untergrundbahn)** (en)

to understand **verstehen**  
unfortunately **leider**  
unfortunately ... **schade ...**  
United Kingdom **Großbritannien**  
unimportant **unwichtig**  
unsatisfactory **ungenügend**  
until **bis**  
unusual **sonderbar**  
unvoiced **stimmlos**  
us **uns**  
the USA **die USA (pl.)**  
to use **benutzen, verwenden**

## V

to vacuum **staubsaugen**  
veal sausage **die Weißwurst (‘e)**  
vegetables **das Gemüse (-)**  
venomous **giftig**  
verb **das Verb (en)**  
vertical (down) **senkrecht**  
very **sehr**  
very good **sehr gut**  
video **das Video (s)**  
Vienna **Wien**  
village **das Dorf (‘er)**  
vinyl record **die Schallplatte (n)**  
violin **die Geige (n)**  
to visit **besuchen**  
voiced **stimmhaft**  
vocabulary **der Wortschatz (‘e)**  
volleyball **Volleyball**  
voucher **der Gutschein (e)**

## W

to wait (for) **warten (auf)**  
wait a moment! **Moment!**  
to go for a walk **spazieren**  
to want (*modal verb*) **wollen**  
warm **warm**  
it is warm **es ist warm**  
to wash (the dishes) **abwaschen**  
washing machine  
**die Waschmaschine (n)**  
watch **die Uhr (en)**  
to watch **zu|sehen**  
watch out! **pass(t) auf!**  
to watch television **fern|sehen**  
water **das Wasser**  
to wax **wachsen**  
way **der Weg (e)**  
we **wir**  
we'll see **mal sehen**  
to wear **tragen**  
wedding anniversary  
**der Hochzeitstag (e)**  
weather **das Wetter (-)**

what is the weather like?  
**wie ist das Wetter?**  
website **die Website (s)**  
Wednesday **der Mittwoch (-)**  
week **die Woche (n)**  
week of cleaning duties (in a  
block of flats)  
**die Kehrwoche (n)**  
weekday **der Wochentag (e)**  
weekend **das Wochenende (n)**  
have a nice weekend!  
**schönes Wochenende!**  
welcome **willkommen**  
welcome! **willkommen!**  
you're (very) welcome **bitte,**  
**bitte schön, bitte sehr**  
well **gut**  
well ... **na ...**  
well done! **gut gemacht!**  
well, thanks **danke, gut**  
what? **was?**  
what a smell! **so ein Mist!**  
what can I do for you? **bitte**  
**schön?**  
what date is it today?  
**der Wievielte ist heute?**  
what is going on here?  
**was ist denn hier los?**  
what is it? **was denn?**  
what is that? **was ist das?**  
what is the weather like?  
**wie ist das Wetter?**  
what time is it? **wie viel Uhr**  
**ist es?, wie spät ist es?**  
what's going on? **wie steht's?**  
what's going on here? **was ist**  
**denn hier los?**  
what's new? **was gibt's Neues?**  
what's up? **was ist los?, gibt's?**  
**gibt es?, was geht?, was geht**  
**ab?**  
what is your name? **wie heißt**  
**du?**  
when? **wann?**  
when is your birthday? **wann**  
**hast du Geburtstag?**  
where? **wo?**  
where do we live? **wo wohnen**  
**wir?**  
where were you? **wo warst**  
**du?**  
where from? **woher?**  
where are you from? **woher**  
**kommst du?**  
whether **ob**  
which? **welche?**  
whipped cream (*Austrian*)  
**das Schlagobers (-)**

whisker **das Schnurrbarthaar (e)**  
white **weiß**  
whiteboard **die Tafel (n)**  
who? **wer?**  
who is that? **wer ist das?**  
from who(m)? **von wem?**  
whole **ganz**  
why? **warum?**  
why not? **warum denn nicht?**  
wide **weit**  
wife **die Frau (en)**  
wild boar **das Wildschwein (e)**  
I will ... **ich werde ...**  
I will never forget this time **ich**  
**werde diese Zeit nie vergessen**  
I will think of you! **ich werde**  
**an Dich denken!**  
I will/we will miss you!  
**du wirst mir/uns fehlen!**  
to win **gewinnen**  
windy **windig**  
it is windy **es ist windig**  
window **das Fenster (-)**  
wine **der Wein (e)**  
wing **der Flügel (-)**  
winter **der Winter (-)**  
winter clothes  
**die Winterkleidung**  
winter holiday  
**die Winterreise (n)**  
winter sport **der Wintersport**  
winter sports resort  
**der Wintersportort (e)**  
to wish **wünschen**  
wishlist **die Wunschliste (n)**  
witch **die Hexe (n)**  
with **mit**  
with pleasure **gern**  
without **ohne**  
wolf **der Wolf (‘e)**  
woman **die Frau (en)**  
wonder **das Wunder (-)**  
wonderful **wunderbar, herrlich**  
word **das Wort (‘er)**  
word order (*gramm.*)  
**die Wortstellung (en)**  
word search **die Wortsuche (n)**  
to work **arbeiten**  
workbook **das Arbeitsbuch (‘er)**  
worker **der Arbeiter (-) (male),**  
**die Arbeiterin (nen) (female)**  
world **die Welt (en)**  
worry **die Sorge (n)**  
would like **möchte**  
would you like to dance?  
**möchtest du gern tanzen?**

wristwatch

**die Armbanduhr (en)**

to write **schreiben**

write that down! **schreib(t) das auf!**

writing tips **Schreibtipps**

wrong **falsch**

## Y

year **das Jahr (e)**

... year old ... **Jahre alt**

yellow **gelb**

yes **ja**

yes, absolutely! **ja und wie!**

yes, gladly (with pleasure) **ja, gerne**

yes, that's true **ja, stimmt**

yesterday **gestern**

yoghurt **der Joghurt (s)**

you (*sing. informal*) **du, dich, dir;**

(*pl.*) **ihr, euch;** (*sing. formal*) **Sie**

you are getting on my nerves!

**du gehst mir auf die Nerven!**

you look angry! **du siehst**

**sauer aus!**

you're (very) welcome **bitte,**

**bitte schön, bitte sehr**

you're a lucky person **du bist**

**ein Glückspilz**

young **jung**

your (*sing. informal*) **dein/deine/**

**deinen,** (*pl.*) **euer/eure,** (*formal*)

**Ihr/Ihre/Ihren**

youth guest house

**das Jugendgästehaus (""er)**

youth hostel

**die Jugendherberge (n)**

yuck! **pfui!, igitt!**

yum! **lecker!**

## Z

zebra **das Zebra (s)**

zero **null**

zone **die Zone (n)**

zoo **der Zoo (s)**

## Overview

*Ganz Klasse!* 1 and 2 is a fresh, new series for beginner students of German in Years 7–10. It has been written to fully address the requirements of the Australian Curriculum: German, Victorian Curriculum: German and New South Wales German syllabus. Features of the series include:

- Integrated, easy-to-use print and digital resources with engaging and contemporary content
- A strong emphasis on cultural and intercultural teaching and learning, carefully integrated within a communicative approach
- Numerous opportunities for differentiated learning, language practice and language use
- A stimulating and clean design to visually assist students in their learning



Level 1 Student Book  
9780170419505



Level 1 Workbook  
9780170419543



Level 1 Teacher Toolkit  
9780170419550



Level 2 Student Book  
9780170419512



Level 2 Workbook  
9780170419529



Level 2 Teacher Toolkit  
9780170419536

## Student book features

- Clearly structured to allow for meaningful and fun language and cultural learning, reflecting and comparing
- Provides a variety of tasks and texts that consolidate both productive and receptive skills, interwoven with opportunities for the development of general capabilities and cross-curriculum priorities
- Lively cartoon spreads, photos, reading passages and multiple occasions for intercultural reflection.